

A framework for enhancing social sustainability through the planning of Third Places: a South African approach

Z Goosen orcid.org 0000-0002-4795-1802

Thesis submitted in fulfilment of the requirements for the degree *Doctor of Philosophy in Town- and Regional Planning* at the North-West University

Promoter: Prof EJ Cilliers

Graduation May 2019 22095128

.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

My saviour and heavenly Father. Thank you for showing me the light and the way.

A sincere thank you to:

My mentor and supervisor, Professor EJ Cilliers, who has become a friend. Your never-ending incentive, assistance, mentorship, input and motivation throughout this research project has been invaluable. Thank you for inspiring my mind and challenging my abilities daily.

To my parents, Johann and Annette, and sibling Charné, your continued support and motivation throughout my studies have been tremendous. Thank you for being my rock.

Jean, your motivation and support has always been unlimited. Thank you.

A word of appreciation to the North-West University and the staff of its Potchefstroom Campus, specifically the Ferdinand Postma Library, for the excellent academic support provided. Further appreciation is extended towards Dr Erika Fourie of the Statistical Consultation Services of the North-West University.

The financial assistance of the National Research Foundation (NRF) towards this research is hereby acknowledged. The opinions and conclusions expressed herein are those of the author and are not necessarily attributed to the NRF. Parts of this research has been published as academic papers. A research paper, forming the first part of a series of papers to be published from this PhD study, has been submitted for reviewing.

Finally, sincere gratitude is extended to the editor, Gerdus Senekal.

ABSTRACT

Social sustainability, a dimension of sustainable development, has become increasingly influential in the urban planning context. However, there is limited research to guide urban planning approaches towards enhanced social sustainability, especially within the South African context. Although existing policy and legislative frameworks support the notion of sustainable development in South Africa, specific implementation strategies are absent. The lack of practical application of planning approaches has resulted in the widening of the theory-practice gap and alternative approaches should be considered to enhance social sustainability within the urban fabric.

This research reflects on the importance of social sustainability in the urban context and the role of the Third Place in facilitating social sustainability. The concept of Third Places, established by Oldenburg (1999:16), is considered and introduced as any space other than our homes (First Place) or work (Second Place), manifesting as a component of well-defined public places designed to enhance civic identity, quality of life, social capital and community revitalisation, whilst improving economic development (Alidoust *et al.*, 2015:2; Camp, 2015:2; Liu *et al.*, 2007:1).

The Third Place concept is thus introduced in this research as an umbrella concept combining the physical realm and design of the social space. This research considered the notion of Third Places from the perspective of three purposefully selected planning approaches, including the place-making approach, the lively planning approach and the green urbanism approach. These approaches were collectively employed as part of a qualitative enquiry to inform a theory-based framework to enhance social sustainability through the planning of Third Places. The three approaches were selected based on their responses to social problems in the urban context, emerging from the policies that the physical environment can positively influence well-being and quality of life (De Jong, 2014:84, 127-130; Karacor, 2014:253).

Theory-based sampling was applied and involves selecting cases according to the extent to which they represent a particular theoretical construct. Purposive sampling (Palys, 2008:297) was in addition applied as the population of the particular theoretical construct is difficult to determine, as in this case referring to limited theoretical guidance on the planning of Third Places. The proposed framework was refined through qualitative and quantitative empirical approaches and translated to the South African planning context. The first phase of the empirical investigation reflected on five international case studies to identify best practices relating to the planning of Third Places for enhanced social sustainability. The second phase

comprised of an expert-survey, including the views of 30 purposefully selected experts relating to the planning of Third Places and the importance thereof within the South African context. The data of the expert-survey was statistically analysed and interpreted to inform a framework for enhancing social sustainability through the planning of Third Places in South Africa.

This research contributes to the academic discourse on social sustainability by reflecting on the role of Third Places to augment objectives of social sustainability. A contribution of new knowledge is evident in terms of the proposed framework for enhancing social sustainability through the planning of Third Places in the South African context.

Keywords: Social sustainability, Third Places, place-making, South African framework

OPSOMMING

'n Raamwerk vir die verbetering van sosiale volhoubaarheid deur Derde Plek-beplanning: 'n Suid-Afrikaanse benadering

Sosiale volhoubaarheid, 'n geïntegreerde konsep van volhoubare ontwikkeling, het toenemend belangrik geword in die stedelike beplanningskonteks. Daar is egter beperkte navorsing ten einde stedelike beplanningbenaderings tot beter sosiale volhoubaarheid op te hef, veral binne die Suid-Afrikaanse konteks. Alhoewel bestaande beleidsraamwerke en wetgewing die konsep van volhoubare ontwikkeling in Suid-Afrika ondersteun, is spesifieke implementeringstrategieë afwesig. Die gebrek aan praktiese toepassing van beplanningsbenaderings het gelei tot die uitbreiding van die teorie-praktykgaping en al dus moet alternatiewe benaderings oorweeg word ten einde sosiale volhoubaarheid binne die stedelike opset te verbeter.

Hierdie navorsing weerspieël die belangrikheid van sosiale volhoubaarheid in die stedelike konteks en die rol van die Derde Plek in die fasilitering van sosiale volhoubaarheid. Die konsep van Derde Plekke, gevestig deur Oldenburg (1999:16), word beskou as enige ruimte uitsluitend woonhuise (Eerste Plek) of werkplek (Tweede Plek), wat vertoon as 'n komponent van goed gedefinieerde openbare plekke wat ontwerp is ten einde burgerlike identiteit, lewenskwaliteit, sosiale welstand en gemeenskapsvernuwing te verbeter, terwyl ekonomiese ontwikkeling bevorder word (Alidoust *et al.*, 2015:2; Camp, 2015:2; Liu *et al.*, 2007:1).

Die Derde-plek-konsep word dus in hierdie navorsing as 'n alomvattende konsep voorgestel wat die fisiese gebied en die ontwerp van die sosiale ruimte kombineer. Hierdie navorsing het die aspek van Derde Plekke oorweeg vanuit die oogpunt van drie doelgerigte geselekteerde beplanningsbenaderings, insluitend die plekskepping-benadering (*place-making*), die lewendige beplanningsbenadering (*lively planning*) en die groen stedelike benadering (*green urbanism*). Hierdie benaderings is gesamentlik oorweeg as deel van 'n kwalitatiewe ondersoek ten einde 'n teorie-gebaseerde raamwerk daar te stel ten einde sosiale volhoubaarheid te bevorder deur die beplanning van Derde Plekke. Hierdie drie benaderings is van toepassing gemaak op hierdie studie vanweë hul invloed op sosiale probleme in die stedelike konteks, wat voortspruit daaruit dat fisiese omgewing welstand en lewenskwaliteit positief kan beïnvloed (De Jong, 2014:84, 127-130; Karacor, 2014:253).

Teorie-gebaseerde steekproefneming is toegepas. Dit behels die keuse van gevalle volgens die mate waarin hulle 'n bepaalde teoretiese konstruksie verteenwoordig. Doelgerigte steekproefneming (Palys, 2008:297) is ook toegepas daar die bevolking van die bepaalde teoretiese konstruksie moeilik is om te bepaal, soos in hierdie geval daar verwys word na

beperkte teoretiese leiding ten opsigte van die beplanning van Derde Plekke. Die voorgestelde raamwerk is aangepas deur kwalitatiewe en kwantitatiewe empiriese benaderings vir die Suid-Afrikaanse beplanningskonteks. Die eerste fase van die empiriese ondersoek sluit vyf internasionale gevallestudies in ten einde beste praktyke te identifiseer wat verband hou met die beplanning van Derde Plekke vir verbeterde sosiale volhoubaarheid. Die tweede fase bestaan uit 'n kundige opname, insluitend die opinies van 30 doelgerig gekose kundiges wat verband hou met die beplanning van Derde Plekke en die belangrikheid daarvan binne die Suid-Afrikaanse konteks. Die data van die kundige opname is statisties ontleed en geïnterpreteer ten einde 'n raamwerk vir die verbetering van sosiale volhoubaarheid daar te stel deur die beplanning van Derde Plekke in Suid-Afrika.

Hierdie navorsing dra by tot die akademiese gesprek oor sosiale volhoubaarheid deur te besin oor die rol van Derde Plekke ten einde doelwitte van sosiale volhoubaarheid uit te brei. 'n Bydrae van nuwe kennis blyk uit die voorgestelde raamwerk vir die bevordering van sosiale volhoubaarheid deur die beplanning van Derde Plekke in die Suid-Afrikaanse konteks.

Sleutelwoorde: Sosiale volhoubaarheid, Derde Plekke, plekskepping, Suid-Afrikaanse raamwerk

TABLE OF CONTENTS

| ACKNOWLE | DGEMENTSI | l | |
|------------|---|---|--|
| ABSTRACT. | | | |
| OPSOMMING | 3IV | , | |
| | | | |
| CHAPTER 1: | INTRODUCTION 1 | | |
| 1.1 | Unpacking the title of this research 1 | | |
| 1.2 | Research orientation and point of departure2 |) | |
| 1.3 | Problem statement motivating this research 3 | , | |
| 1.4 | Research question4 | | |
| 1.4.1 | Research aim and objectives4 | | |
| 1.5 | Research methodology4 | | |
| 1.5.1 | Methodology for literature investigation 4 | | |
| 1.5.2 | Methodology for empirical investigation 5 | , | |
| 1.5.2.1 | Phase 1: Case study review6 | ; | |
| 1.5.2.2 | Phase 2: Expert-survey7 | | |
| 1.6 | Ethical considerations 8 | , | |
| 1.7 | Literature statement9 |) | |
| 1.8 | Research limitations9 |) | |
| 1.9 | Structure of the research and chapter division9 |) | |
| | CHAPTER 2: CONSIDERING SOCIAL SUSTAINABILITY AND THE NOTION OF THIRD PLACES | | |
| 2.1 | Introduction | | |
| 2.2 | The notion of sustainable development14 | • | |

| 2.3 | Dimensions of sustainable development | 15 |
|---------|---|----|
| 2.3.1 | Social dimension of sustainability | 16 |
| 2.3.2 | Economic dimension of sustainability | 17 |
| 2.3.3 | Environmental dimension of sustainability | 18 |
| 2.4 | The spatial interpretation of sustainable development | 19 |
| 2.4.1 | Planning for sustainable communities | 22 |
| 2.5 | Emphasising social sustainability | 24 |
| 2.6 | Urban space as host for social sustainability | 26 |
| 2.7 | Revisiting the notion of Third Places | 30 |
| 2.7.1 | Characteristics of Third Places | 31 |
| 2.7.2 | Third Places in relation to sustainable development | 31 |
| 2.8 | Conclusion | 35 |
| | R 3: THE PLANNING OF THIRD PLACES FOR ENHANCED SOCIAL ABILITY | 38 |
| 3.1 | Introduction | 38 |
| 3.2 | Planning approach: Place-making | 39 |
| 3.2.1 | Place-making planning scales | 41 |
| 3.2.1.1 | Urban or city plan scale of place-making | 42 |
| 3.2.1.2 | Neighbourhood or site plan scale of place-making | 42 |
| 3.2.1.3 | Human or people plan scale of place-making | 42 |
| 3.2.2 | Planning and design considerations of place-making | 43 |
| 3.3 | Planning approach: Lively planning | 49 |
| 3.3.1 | Planning and design considerations of Lively planning | 50 |

| 3.4 | Planning approach: Green urbanism | 52 |
|---------|--|----|
| 3.4.1 | Planning and design considerations of green urbanism | 53 |
| 3.5 | Theory-based framework to inform the planning of Third Places | 55 |
| 3.6 | Conclusion | 63 |
| | 4: REFLECTING ON THE SOUTH AFRICAN PLANNING REALITY FROM A USTAINABILITY PERSPECTIVE | 65 |
| 4.1 | Introduction | |
| 4.2 | Local urban realities and challenges | 65 |
| 4.3 | Local planning policy and legislative frameworks | 68 |
| 4.3.1 | Constitution of the Republic of South Africa (Act 108 of 1996) | 69 |
| 4.3.2 | National Environmental Management Act 107 of 1998 (NEMA) | 71 |
| 4.3.3 | Municipal Systems Act 32 of 2000 (MSA) | 72 |
| 4.3.4 | National Urban Development Framework (2009) (NUDF) | 73 |
| 4.3.5 | Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act 16 of 2013 (SPLUMA) | 73 |
| 4.3.6 | National Strategy for Sustainable Development and Action Plan 2011-2014 (NSSD) | 75 |
| 4.3.7 | National Development Plan 2030 (NDP) | 75 |
| 4.3.8 | Evaluation matrix of South African policy and legislative framework | 77 |
| 4.4 | Conclusion | 82 |
| CHAPTER | 5: EMPIRICAL INVESTIGATION | 83 |
| 5.1 | Introduction | 83 |
| 5.2 | Phase 1: Case study reviews | 84 |
| 5.2.1 | Case 1: The case of Las Ramblas Boulevard, Barcelona, Spain | 85 |

| 5.2.1.1 | Location overview | 85 |
|-----------|--|-----|
| 5.2.1.2 | Planning principles employed in Las Ramblas Boulevard | 85 |
| 5.2.1.3 | Visual illustrations of Third Place planning in Las Ramblas Boulevard | 89 |
| 5.2.1.4 | Case study review for best practices in Las Ramblas Boulevard | 90 |
| 5.2.2 | Case 2: The case of Bryant Park, New York, United States of America | 94 |
| 5.2.2.1 | Location overview | 94 |
| 5.2.2.2 | Planning principles employed in Bryant Park | 94 |
| 5.2.2.2.1 | Parks, open spaces and recreational facilities | 95 |
| 5.2.2.2 | Active design guidelines, promoting physical activity and health in design | 96 |
| 5.2.2.3 | Illustrations of Third Place planning in Bryant Park | 98 |
| 5.2.2.4 | Case study review for best practices in Bryant Park | 99 |
| 5.2.3 | Case 3: The case of the High Line, New York, United States of America | 102 |
| 5.2.3.1 | Location overview | 102 |
| 5.2.3.2 | Planning principles employed in the High Line | 103 |
| 5.2.3.3 | Visual illustrations of Third Place planning in the High Line | 105 |
| 5.2.3.4 | Case study review for best practices in the High Line | 106 |
| 5.2.4 | Case 4: The case of Noriega Street Parklet, San Francisco, California | 109 |
| 5.2.4.1 | Location overview | 109 |
| 5.2.4.2 | Planning principles employed in Noriega Street Parklet | 110 |
| 5.2.4.3 | Illustrations of Third Place planning in Noriega Street | 112 |
| 5.2.4.4 | Case study review for best practices in Noriega Street Parklet | 112 |
| 5.2.5 | Case 5: The case of Perth Cultural Centre, Perth, Western Australia | 115 |

| 5.2.5.1 | Location overview | . 115 |
|-----------|---|-------|
| 5.2.5.2 | Planning principles employed in Perth Cultural Centre | . 115 |
| 5.2.5.3 | Illustrations of Third Place planning in Perth Cultural Centre | . 117 |
| 5.2.5.4 | Case study review for best practices in Perth Cultural Centre | . 118 |
| 5.2.6 | Collective case study review and interpretation | . 121 |
| 5.3 | Phase 2: Expert-survey | . 123 |
| 5.3.1 | Expert-survey results | . 124 |
| 5.3.1.1.1 | Third Place importance within spatial planning | . 127 |
| 5.3.1.1.2 | Improvement of social sustainability through Third Places | . 128 |
| 5.3.1.1.3 | Third Places to create a sense of place and community | . 128 |
| 5.3.1.1.4 | Importance of public participation in Third Place planning | . 128 |
| 5.3.2 | Expert-survey review and interpretation | . 128 |
| 5.4 | Conclusion | . 130 |
| CHAPTER (| 6: CONCLUSIONS | . 132 |
| 6.1 | Introduction | . 132 |
| 6.2 | Conclusions drawn with regard to research objectives | . 132 |
| 6.2.1 | Conclusion 1: The planning of Third Places can enhance social sustainability | . 132 |
| 6.2.2 | Conclusion 2: A compilation of socially orientated planning approaches can inform the planning of Third Places as point of departure. | . 135 |
| 6.2.3 | Conclusion 3: International best practices can be translated to the local context, in line with guiding policy and legislative frameworks | . 137 |

| 6.2.4 | Conclusion 4: Local perspectives can contribute to enhance social | |
|---------|--|-----|
| | sustainability through the planning of Third Places within the South African context | 120 |
| | COINEX | 139 |
| 6.2.5 | Conclusion 5: Social sustainability can be enhanced through a refined | |
| | framework facilitating the planning of Third Places in South Africa | 140 |
| 6.3 | Conclusion | 143 |
| CHAPTER | 7: RECOMMENDATIONS TO ENHANCE SOCIAL SUSTAINABILITY | |
| THROUGH | H THIRD PLACE PLANNING | 147 |
| 7.1 | Introduction | 147 |
| 7.2 | Planning recommendations | 147 |
| 7.2.1 | Planning recommendation 1: Enhance social sustainability within | |
| | sustainable development approaches | 148 |
| 7.2.2 | Planning recommendation 2: Emphasise the planning of Third Places within | |
| | broader spatial planning approaches | 151 |
| 7.2.3 | Planning recommendation 3: Transform current urban spaces to Third | |
| | Places to enhance broader social sustainability objectives | 152 |
| 7.2.4 | Planning recommendation 4: Enhance social sustainability within policy and | |
| | legislative frameworks to support the planning of Third Places | 153 |
| 7.2.5 | Planning recommendation 5: Employ a framework to enhance social | |
| | sustainability within the South African context through focussing on the | |
| | planning of Third Places | 155 |
| 7.2.5.1 | Social inclusivity: Setting of a social stage | 158 |
| 7.2.5.2 | Multi-functionality: Diversity for regularity | 158 |
| 7.2.5.3 | Accessibility: Pedestrian-orientated | 159 |
| 7.2.5.4 | Perceptibility: Sense of place | 159 |
| 7.2.5.5 | Marketability: LQC strategy to enhance social sustainability | 159 |

| 7.2.5.6 | Environmental sensitivity: Nature-based solutions | . 160 |
|------------|--|-------|
| 7.2.5.7 | Adaptability: Transformation of existing open spaces to Third Places | . 160 |
| 7.2.5.8 | Intrinsic connectivity: Focused participatory planning | . 160 |
| 7.3 | Opportunities for future research | . 161 |
| 7.4 | Conclusion | . 161 |
| CHAPTER 8: | CONTRIBUTION TO NEW KNOWLEDGE | . 162 |
| 8.1 | Introduction | . 162 |
| 8.2 | New framework to enhance social sustainability through the planning of Third Places within the South African context | . 162 |
| 8.3 | Key generalisations confirmed and new contributions made | . 164 |
| 8.4 | Closing remarks | . 166 |
| BIBLIOGRAF | PHY | . 167 |
| ANNEXURE | 1: EMPIRICAL RESEARCH, PHASE 1 SURVEY QUESTIONNAIRE | . 193 |
| ANNEXURE : | 2: EMPIRICAL RESEARCH, PHASE 2 CROSS-TABULATION | . 203 |
| ANNEXURE | 3: LANGUAGE EDITING CERTIFICATE | . 208 |
| ANNEXURE | 4: PROOF OF SUBMISSION OF ARTICLE, JOURNAL OF APPLIED | |
| RESEARCH | IN QUALITY OF LIFE | 210 |

LIST OF TABLES

| Table 1-1: | Unpacking the title of this research | 2 |
|------------|---|----|
| Table 1-2: | Case study selection approach and strategy | 6 |
| Table 1-3: | Phase 1 input, methods and output | 7 |
| Table 1-4: | Phase 2 input, methods and output | 8 |
| Table 2-1: | Main characteristics and goals of a sustainable community | 23 |
| Table 2-2: | Conceptual comparison of space and place | 28 |
| Table 2-3: | Direct and indirect benefits of Third Places | 33 |
| Table 2-4: | Interface between the drivers of social sustainability and characteristics of Third Places | 36 |
| Table 3-1: | Key attributes, intangibles and measurements developed by PPS | 44 |
| Table 3-2: | Place-making principle strategies and considerations | 45 |
| Table 3-3: | Place-making design considerations and elements | 48 |
| Table 3-4: | Lively planning design considerations | 51 |
| Table 3-5: | Green urbanism design considerations and elements | 54 |
| Table 3-6: | Collective consideration of the three purposefully selected planning approaches | 56 |
| Table 3-7: | Recoded design considerations for the theory-based framework | 60 |
| Table 3-8: | Theory-based framework | 62 |
| Table 4-1: | Identified policy and legislative frameworks for review | 69 |
| Table 4-2: | Three-tier evaluation matrix ranking system of the identified policy and legislative frameworks | 77 |
| Table 4-3: | Evaluation matrix of purposefully selected policy and legislative frameworks | 79 |

| Table 5-1: | Success factors of Las Ramblas Boulevard | 88 |
|-------------|---|-----|
| Table 5-2: | Case 1 review and best practice identification | 92 |
| Table 5-3: | Success factors of Bryant Park | 97 |
| Table 5-4: | Case 2 review and best practice identification | 100 |
| Table 5-5: | Success factors of the High Line | 104 |
| Table 5-6: | Case 3 review and best practice identification | 107 |
| Table 5-7: | Success factors of Noriega Street Parklet | 111 |
| Table 5-8: | Case 4 review and best practice identification | 113 |
| Table 5-9: | Success factors of Perth Cultural Centre | 116 |
| Table 5-10: | Case 5 review and best practice identification | 119 |
| Table 5-11: | Collective case study review and interpretation | 122 |
| Table 5-12: | Needs and preferences in the Third Place | 125 |
| Table 5-13: | Importance of the quality of characteristics in Third Places | 126 |
| Table 5-14: | Cross-tabulations results of the expert-survey | 127 |
| Table 5-15: | Expert-survey review and interpretation | 129 |
| Table 6-1: | Interface between the drivers of social sustainability and the characteristics of Third Places | 134 |
| Table 6-2: | Theory-based framework for enhanced social sustainability through the planning of Third Places | 136 |
| Table 6-3: | Considerations for the refining of the framework for the South African context | 138 |
| Table 6-4: | Refined framework for enhanced social sustainability through the planning of Third Places in South Africa | 142 |
| Table 6-5: | Key generalisations confirmed and new contributions made by this research | 144 |

| Table 6-6: | Research contribution in line with the respective research objectives | 146 |
|------------|---|-----|
| Table 7-1: | Planning recommendations derived from this research | 148 |
| Table 7-2: | Interface between the design considerations and social sustainability drivers | 150 |
| Table 7-3: | The South African Third Place focus and approach integrated in the refined framework | 157 |
| Table 8-1: | Refined framework to enhance social sustainability through the planning of Third Places | 163 |
| Table 8-2: | Key generalisations confirmed and new contributions made by this research | 165 |

LIST OF FIGURES

| Figure 1-1: | Chapter 1 structure | 1 |
|-------------|---|-------|
| Figure 1-2: | Research structure | 10 |
| Figure 2-1: | Chapter 2 structure | 14 |
| Figure 2-2: | Nested versus overlapping dimensions of Sustainable Development | 16 |
| Figure 2-3: | Sustainability as the intersection of the three dimensions of sustainable development | 19 |
| Figure 2-4: | From Garden Cities to Sustainable Development Goals | 21 |
| Figure 2-5: | Place attachment | 29 |
| Figure 3-1: | Chapter 3 structure | 39 |
| Figure 3-2: | Collaborative place-making process | 41 |
| Figure 3-3: | Place-making planning scales | 42 |
| Figure 3-4: | Three purposefully selected planning approaches informing the theory-based framework | 55 |
| Figure 4-1: | Chapter 4 structure | 65 |
| Figure 5-1: | Chapter 5 structure | 83 |
| Figure 5-2: | Location pin of identified international case studies | 84 |
| Figure 5-3: | Las Ramblas Boulevard illustrations of Third Place planning | 90 |
| Figure 5-4: | Bryant Park layout | 94 |
| Figure 5-5: | Bryant Park illustrations of Third Place planning | 99 |
| Figure 5-6: | Layout of the High Line | . 103 |
| Figure 5-7: | The High Line illustration of Third Place planning | . 106 |
| Figure 5-8: | Layout of Noriega Street Parklet | . 110 |

| Figure 5-9: | Noriega Street Parklet visual illustrations of Third Place planning | . 112 |
|--------------|--|-------|
| Figure 5-10: | Perth Cultural Centre illustrations of Third Place planning | . 118 |
| Figure 5-11: | Profession of survey participants | . 123 |
| Figure 5-12: | Survey participants' highest level of planning education | . 124 |
| Figure 7-1: | Chapter 7 structure | . 147 |
| Figure 7-2: | Questionnaire survey of participant familiarity regarding Third Places | . 151 |
| Figure 7-3: | Transforming space to place | . 153 |
| Figure 7-4: | Hierarchy of plans with focus area | . 154 |
| Figure 7-5: | SPLUMA context with focus area | . 155 |

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

| LQC: | Lighter, quicker, cheaper |
|----------|--|
| NEMA: | National Environmental Management Act |
| NSDP: | National Spatial Development Perspective |
| NUFD: | National Urban Development Framework |
| NDP: | National Development Plan |
| OECD: | Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development |
| PPS: | Project for Public Spaces |
| SACPLAN: | South African Council for Planners |
| SDG: | Sustainable Development Goal |
| SPLUMA: | Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act |
| UNDP: | United Nations Development Program |
| WCED: | World Commission on Environment and Development |

LIST OF DEFINITIONS

The following are important definitions of applicable terminology that were used in this research.

| Green spaces | Land in natural or un-built condition that is proximate and easily | | |
|---------------|--|--|--|
| | accessible to residences and work places, serving as recreational paths | | |
| | for people, and is protective of natural habitat (Atiqul & Shah, 2011:601; | | |
| | De Jong, 2014:97). | | |
| Mixed-use | Mixed-use development locates residential, commercial and industrial | | |
| development | land-use in close proximity to one another (Designing Buildings Wiki, | | |
| | 2017). | | |
| Municipality | An administrative entity with a clearly defined territory and population, | | |
| | governed by the local authorities or local government (English Oxford | | |
| | Living Dictionaries, 2018). | | |
| Open space | Undeveloped land (Al-Hagla, 2008:164), in this research also referred | | |
| | to as unused space. | | |
| Public places | An indoor of outdoor public area to which the public have access (US | | |
| | Legal, 2016), in this research also referred to as public spaces. | | |
| Third Places | Any space other than our homes (First Place) or work (Second Place), | | |
| | manifesting as a component of well-defined public places designed to | | |
| | enhance civic identity, quality of life, social capital and community | | |
| | revitalisation, whilst improving economic development (Alidoust et al., | | |
| | 2015:2; Camp, 2015:2; Liu et al., 2007:1; Oldenburg, 1999:16). | | |
| Urban area | A city, town or node of activity with a very high population density, | | |
| | compared to the surrounding area (The World Bank, 2015). | | |

Source: Authors own construction based on Al-Hagla (2008:164); Alidoust *et al.* (2015:2); Atiqul and Shah (2011:601); Camp (2015:2); De Jong (2014:97); Designing Buildings Wiki (2017); English Oxford Living Dictionaries (2018); Liu *et al.* (2007:1); Oldenburg (1999:16); The World Bank (2015); US Legal (2016)

CHAPTER 1: INTRODUCTION

Chapter 1 provides the introduction and contextualisation of this research. Figure 1-1 represents the structure of Chapter 1.

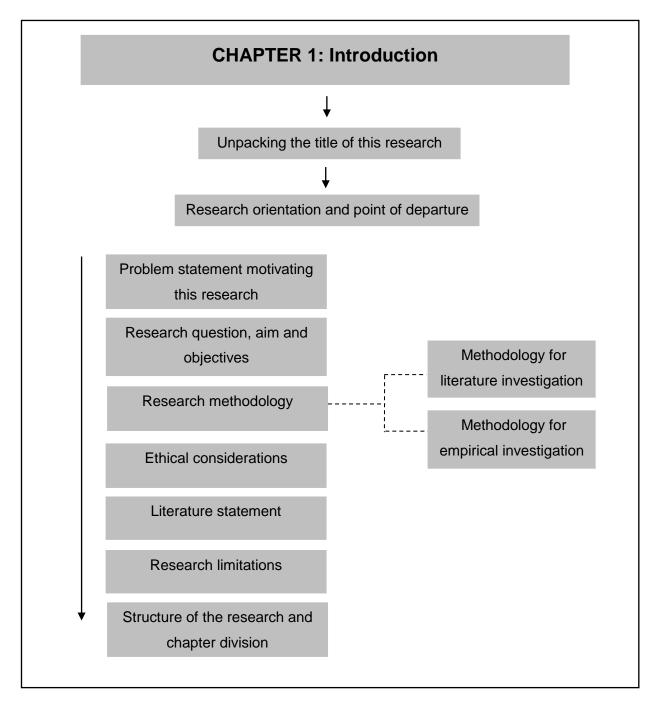


Figure 1-1: Chapter 1 structure

1.1 Unpacking the title of this research

This research reflected on social sustainability and the notion of Third Places from a spatial planning perspective.

The title of this research, "A framework for enhancing social sustainability through the planning of Third Places: a South African approach" is unpacked in Table 1-1 as point of departure.

Table 1-1: Unpacking the title of this research

| Framework | The framework provides structure, in this research, as support of the | |
|----------------|--|--|
| Talliework | • | |
| | theory of the research study (Collins Dictionary, 2018). | |
| Enhancing | Intensify, increase, or further improve the quality, value or extent of | |
| | (English Oxford Living Dictionaries, 2018). | |
| Social | The fulfilment of participation, a shared sense of place, social | |
| sustainability | nability interaction, and improved quality of life in terms of all segments of | |
| | the population through human well-being (Biart, 2002:6; Littig & | |
| | Griebler, 2005:72; Sachs, 1999:27). | |
| Planning | The process of constructing strategies, approaches, thoughts and | |
| | concepts (English Oxford Living Dictionaries, 2018). For purposes of | |
| | this research, implying spatial planning. | |
| Third Places | The social surroundings separated from one's home (First Place) or | |
| | work (Second Place). A public place where people choose to gather | |
| | and interact based on the social stage created (Oldenburg, 1999:41). | |
| Approach | To attempt (Your Dictionary, 2018). For purposes of this research, | |
| •• | implying the perspective, point of view or outlook. | |
| | | |

Source: Authors own construction based on Biart (2002:6); Collins Dictionary (2018); English Oxford Living Dictionaries (2018); Littig and Griebler (2005:72); Oldenburg (1999:41); Sachs (1999:27); Your Dictionary (2018)

1.2 Research orientation and point of departure

This research reflected on social sustainability, by considering Oldenburg's (1999:16) Third Place concept within the urban context. The notion of Third Places was considered from the perspective of three purposefully selected planning approaches, including place-making, lively planning and green urbanism. Theoretical sampling (Bagnasco *et al.*, 2014:6), where employed to collect data and generate theories (Charmaz, 2014:106; Glaser & Strauss, 1967) to inform a collective consideration of the three planning approaches. Theory-based sampling involves selecting cases according to the extent to which they represent a particular theoretical

construct. Purposive sampling (Palys, 2008:297) was applied as the population of the particular theoretical construct is difficult to determine, as in this case referring to limited theoretical guidance on the planning of Third Places.

The collective consideration of the three approaches informed the compilation of a theory-based framework for enhanced social sustainability through the planning of Third Places. The theory-based framework was further refined as part of the empirical investigation, in context of five international case studies, to identify best practices to guide the planning of Third Places, and in context of an expert-survey, exploring viewpoints of 30 experts relating to the planning of Third Places in the local South African context (detailed methodology to be explained in Section 1.5).

The purpose of this research was to 1) reflect on sustainable development with the emphasis on social sustainability and the linkages with the Third Place concept; 2) to develop a theory-based framework as point of departure, for the planning of Third Places through a qualitative enquiry into three purposefully selected planning approaches; 3) to consider the notion of Third Places from international and local perspectives, in line with guiding policy and legislative frameworks; and 4) to create a framework, based on the literature and empirical investigation, to enhance social sustainability through the planning of Third Places, applicable to the South African context. This contributes to the research objectives set out in Section 1.4.1.

1.3 Problem statement motivating this research

The concept of "sustainability" has become increasingly influential in the urban planning discipline (Levent *et al.*, 2004:2). This is mainly due to an emphasis on the quality of urban life (Levent *et al.*, 2004:2) and social well-being within urban areas.

Sustainability was put forward as a creator and maintainer of the conditions under which humans and nature can exist in productive harmony that permits fulfilling the social, economic and environmental requirements of present and future generations (Al-Hagla, 2008:162-163; Wolch *et al.*, 2014:234). As public life is an essential part of the broader social structure, the notion of Third Places (Oldenburg, 1999:16) could be considered as a facilitator in fuelling public life (Camp, 2015:ii), especially in terms of the direct (economic) and indirect (environmental and social) benefits provided by Third Places (as will be explained in Section 2.7.2).

The reality in South Africa suggests that little attention is given to public environments (Parker, 2014; Southworth, 2007:4), due to challenges faced in terms of limited basic services (Southworth, 2007:4), housing backlogs, growing populations (Pacione, 2005:127) and budget constraints. Therefore, this research revisited the Third Place concept (Oldenburg, 1999:16), in

an attempt to create a framework to enhance social sustainability through the panning of Third Places in South Africa. Currently, no framework exists within broader spatial planning approaches in South Africa to guide the planning of Third Places.

1.4 Research question

The main research question of this thesis is articulated as follows: How can the notion of Third Places contribute to enhance social sustainability, especially in the South African context?

1.4.1 Research aim and objectives

The primary aim of this research was to create a framework for enhancing social sustainability through the planning of Third Places in the local South African context.

The research objectives include to:

- reflect on sustainable development, with the emphasis on social sustainability and the linkages with the Third Place concept;
- develop a theory-based framework for enhancing social sustainability through a qualitative enquiry into three purposefully selected planning approaches relating to the planning of Third Places;
- consider international case studies and identify best practices relating to the planning of Third Places, in an attempt to refine the proposed framework in line with guiding policy and legislative frameworks;
- capture the local interpretation of planning for Third Places from a professional perspective and to statistically interpret findings to inform the proposed framework; and
- recommend a framework to enhance social sustainability through the planning of Third Places, translating literature and empirical investigation findings to the South African context.

1.5 Research methodology

1.5.1 Methodology for literature investigation

A broad theoretical base for understanding the importance of Third Places in modern society exists, but relatively few studies have put forward approaches for planning Third Places as part of a broader spatial planning approach within urban areas of South Africa, especially from the point of departure to enhance social sustainability (Crick, 2011:2; Jeffres *et al.*, 2009:334; Stein, 2003:4).

As part of a qualitative inquiry to inform a theory-based framework for the planning of Third Places within the local South African urban context, three purposefully selected planning approaches were considered in this research, including the place-making approach, the lively planning approach and the green urbanism approach. The three approaches considered in this research were selected based on their responses to social problems in the urban context, emerging from the policies that the physical environment can positively influence well-being and quality of life (De Jong, 2014:84, 127-130; Karacor, 2014:253).

Theoretical sampling (Bagnasco *et al.*, 2014:6), which is a unique feature of grounded theory (Butler *et al.*, 2018:1; Draucker *et al.*, 2007:1137), where employed to collect data and generate theories (Charmaz, 2014:106; Glaser & Strauss, 1967). Theory-based sampling involves selecting cases according to the extent to which they represent a particular theoretical construct. Purposive sampling (Palys, 2008:297) was applied as the population of the particular theoretical construct is difficult to determine, as in this case referring to limited theoretical guidance on the planning of Third Places.

Upon completion of the qualitative enquiry into the respective planning approaches, a self-evaluation was applied to evaluate the policy and legislative frameworks applicable to social sustainability. Self-evaluation, which is formative (Black & Wiliam, 1998:7-8) in this research, comprised of two key elements (Boud & Falchikov, 1989:529). Firstly, the identification of criteria (ranking scale) of the evaluation, and secondly the motivation of the ranking allocated. The evaluation was based on a three-tier ranking system pertaining to the tier to which sustainable development, social sustainability and public place planning is dealt with within each respective policy or legislative framework. The results of the evaluation of the policy and legislative frameworks contributed in establishing the comparison between the grounded theory and the status quo in South Africa regarding the need for Third Place planning to enhance social sustainability.

1.5.2 Methodology for empirical investigation

The empirical investigation of this research comprised of two phases: 1) a case study review aiming to identify international best practices (qualitative research approach), and 2) a structured expert-questionnaire (quantitative research approach) that identified the local interpretation towards social sustainability and the planning of Third Places. Both phases informed the refinement of the proposed framework for the South African context.

The dual approach employed in the empirical investigation (inclusion of both qualitative and quantitative research) enhanced triangulation (Bryman, 2012) of the findings.

1.5.2.1 Phase 1: Case study review

Phase 1, the case study review, reflected on international case studies to identify best practices relating to the planning of Third Places. The sample size consisted of five purposefully selected international case studies, where each case study was reviewed in terms of the theory-based framework for Third Places, compiled in Chapter 3 of the literature section of this research. The sample of five case studies was neither a comprehensive sample nor was it representative of Third Place planning approaches. It was rather an informative sample, providing insight into the application of the notion of Third Places and the planning thereof (Kim & Skinner, 2013:385).

Although case study research does not allow findings and conclusions to be generalised to all other cases (for example those with different contexts), it did allow generalisation to theory and the formulation of theoretical propositions, in this case the identification of best practices relating to the planning of Third Places. The case study review contributed to the refinement of the proposed framework for the local South African context by drawing on best practices related to the spatial planning context.

The case study selection was strategic, as explained in Table 1-2 referring to the case study selection approach and strategy.

Table 1-2: Case study selection approach and strategy

| TYPE OF | | PURPOSE OF | CASE | IDENTIFYING |
|--------------|-----------------|------------------------------|---------------|---------------|
| SELECTION | STRATEGY | | | |
| (APPROACH) | | SELECTION | TYPE | GUIDELINES |
| Purposefully | Cases were | To obtain information on | International | Project for |
| selected | identified | how a variable affects | | Public Spaces |
| cases. | based on | case process and | | (PPS) |
| | expectations | outcome, e.g. five | | |
| | regarding their | international cases which | | Theory of Ray |
| | informational | vary greatly in variables | | Oldenburg on |
| | content and | (size, location, scale etc.) | | Third Places |
| | relevancy to | and have one aspect in | | |
| | Third Place | common: providing a | | |
| | planning. | Third Place in an urban | | |
| | | environment. | | |

The five purposefully selected case studies included Las Ramblas Boulevard in Barcelona, Bryant Park in New York City, The High Line in New York City, Noriega Street Parklet in San Francisco and Perth Cultural Centre in Perth. Table 1-3 illustrates the inputs, methods, and output related to Phase 1.

Table 1-3: Phase 1 input, methods and output

| | INPUT | METHODS | OUTPUT |
|---|----------------------------|----------------|----------------------------|
| • | Theory-based framework | Research | International best |
| | compiled in Section 3.5 | Investigation | practices identified to |
| | for review of each | Review | form part of a refined |
| | international case study. | Identification | framework facilitating the |
| • | Five purposefully selected | Illustration | planning of Third Places |
| | international case studies | | for the South African |
| | to be reviewed. | | context. |

Phase 1 was designed to consider each purposefully selected international case study in terms of its location, principles and guidelines applicable in the planning of the Third Place, visual material, and finally best practices related to the theory-based framework (as will be explained in Section 3.5).

The case study review concluded with a collective review of the five case studies, considering the possibilities of translating international best practices to the South African context.

1.5.2.2 Phase 2: Expert-survey

Phase 2 of the empirical investigation consisted of a structured expert-survey to capture 1) the opinions of experts relating to the planning of Third Places, 2) the importance of planning for these places within the South African context and 3) the anticipated social sustainability impact that Third Places might provide to the local context.

Participants were purposefully selected in terms of their specialisation, experience and knowledge of Third Place planning, green planning, urban development, public spaces and lively places. The participants included Professional Planners as per the South African Council for Planners (SACPLAN) criteria (both public and private sector), Candidate Planners (SACPLAN criteria) and academic researchers. Based on the advantages regarding cost efficiency, practicality, scalability, user anonymity and immediate results, a e-questionnaire was sent to 162 candidates and a total of 30 participants (n=30) completed a valid questionnaire. The e-questionnaire response rate (n=30) was regarded as sufficient due to the overall research

topic and title remaining a fairly new planning approach within the South African context. This response rate could conceivably have been increased by implementing strategies including the optimization of the survey for different devices, survey repetition or follow up methods and by shortening the survey to ensure the most relevant questions are answered and addressed through the expert perspectives.

Table 1-4 illustrates the inputs, methods and output employed in Phase 2 of the empirical investigation.

Table 1-4: Phase 2 input, methods and output

| INPUT | METHODS | OUTPUT |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Expert participants | Frequency evaluation | Quantified results of the |
| completed an | Cross-tabulation | expert perspectives on |
| e-questionnaire based on | | enhancing social |
| Third Place relevancy and | | sustainability through the |
| literature investigation. | | planning of Third Place |
| | | within South Africa. |

The data was captured by the North-West University Statistical Consultation Services in terms of frequencies and cross-tabulations (refer to Annexure 2) where Cramer's V illustrated the practical significance between two variables (symbolised by V: large effect or practical significant association V ~ 0,5; a medium effect or practical visible significant association V ~ 0,3; and a small effect or practical non-significant association V ~ 0,1) (Ellis and Steyn, 2013:52). P-values were reported for the sake of completeness but were not interpreted since a convenience sample instead of a random sample was applied. The data was interpreted to provide valuable supportive information on the local perspective pertaining to Third Place planning.

1.6 Ethical considerations

This research conformed to the ethical guidelines of the North-West University's Unit for Environmental Sciences and Management. Phase 2 of the empirical investigation relied on informed consent provided by all participants, with specific reference to voluntary participation. Participants granted permission to be included in this research by virtue of completion of the equestionnaire. Participation were handled confidentially to protect the identity of the participants and therefore the results in this research referred to broader categories of participants and does not reflect any personal details of the participants. The e-questionnaire (refer to Annexure 1) distributed to the purposefully identify participants implied that the researcher had no direct

contact with the participants, but only through online portals where participation was voluntary. No vulnerable groups were included, and no questions of a personal nature were posed. The data was statistically analysed to present a quantitative view of the expert perspectives, thus not pertaining to individual viewpoints.

The method of objectivity was applied to enhance the trustworthiness of the data collection, where the researcher remained objective in relation to the participants, ensuring a non-influential approach. The validity of the interpretation of the data results were further confirmed due to propositions generated and tested, matching the current conditions that exist as stated in the problem statement of this research.

1.7 Literature statement

The literature statement for this research is articulated as follows: The planning of Third Places within South Africa could enhance social sustainability. Based on contextualised research, forming a theory-based framework and the identification of international best practices and expert perspectives, a refined framework was developed to enhance social sustainability through the planning of Third Paces within the South African context.

1.8 Research limitations

Chapter 2 of this research included literature on sustainable development, a complex concept (WCED, 1987:54-55) that is widely debated and applied in different contexts. This research acknowledged the socio-political aspect relevant within urban planning and sustainability but focused on the consideration of the social dimension of sustainability and how such could be enhanced from a spatial planning perspective. This research is thus limited to the social dimension of sustainable development and considered three purposefully selected planning approaches as point of departure to inform a framework for enhanced social sustainability. Supplementary planning approaches were recognised but was not considered in this research and could be explored as part of future research emerging from this research.

1.9 Structure of the research and chapter division

This research was divided into eight chapters. The structure of this research document is illustrated in Figure 1-2.

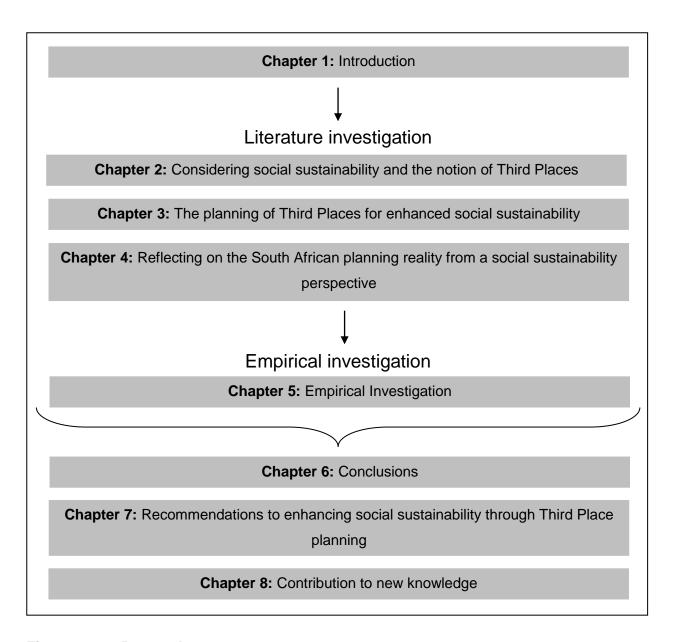


Figure 1-2: Research structure

Following the preceding sections, the contents of **Chapter 1** is evident.

Chapter 2 of this research set the literature investigation in motion to enhance social sustainability through considering the planning of Third Places. The chapter commenced by introducing the notion of sustainable development and the concept of sustainability, where after the three dimensions of sustainable development were portrayed. The spatial interpretation of sustainable development was further explored within Chapter 2, elaborating on the Sustainable Development Goals, highlighting Goal 11 (Sustainable cities and communities). Emphasis was subsequently placed on social sustainability. Urban space as host for social sustainability was further elaborated on, depicting on the difference found within space and place within urban areas. The motivation for place attachment was furthermore presented, confirming that place

carries more value than space within urban areas. Finally, the notion of Third Places was introduced and elaborated on with reference to the specific characteristics of Third Places and the relation to sustainable development.

Chapter 3 continued with the literature investigation by portraying three purposefully selected planning approaches (place-making, lively planning and green urbanism) in facilitating the planning of Third Places to enhance social sustainability. Each planning approach towards Third Places were put forward by highlighting specific design considerations and elements to formulate a theory-based framework based on the three purposefully selected planning approaches.

Chapter 4 concluded the literature investigation by reflecting on the South African planning reality, local challenges, and applicable policy and legislative frameworks. After elaborating on the current urban realities and challenges faced within South Africa, applicable policy and legislative frameworks were portrayed and expanded on, concluding with an evaluation matrix on these frameworks. Chapter 4 of this research, forming part of the literature investigation, played a vital part in establishing the comparison between the grounded theory and the status quo in South Africa concerning the need for Third Place planning to enhance social sustainability.

Chapter 5 consisted of the empirical investigation of this research and contained two phases. Phase 1 was put forward as the qualitative approach. This phase included a case study review conducted on five purposefully selected international case studies on successful Third Places in order to identify best practices and concludes with a collective case study review. Phase 2, the quantitative approach, included a survey which portrayed expert opinions on the planning of Third Places to enhance social sustainability specifically within the local South African context.

Chapter 6 of this research consisted of the conclusion. The concluding remarks formulated within Chapter 6 were based on the research objectives of the main research question put forward in Section 1.4 of Chapter 1. Integrating the literature and empirical investigation put forward, a refined framework for enhanced social sustainability through the planning of Third Place in the local South African context was proposed. Chapter 6 concluded with the key generalisations confirmed and new contributions made within this research.

In **Chapter 7** planning recommendations were proposed for the enhancement of social sustainability through the planning of Third Places for the local South African context. Opportunities for future research were also identified.

Chapter 8 reflected on the contribution made towards new knowledge, highlighting the proposed framework compiled to enhance social sustainability through the planning of Third Places in the local South African context.

CHAPTER 2: CONSIDERING SOCIAL SUSTAINABILITY AND THE NOTION OF THIRD PLACES

2.1 Introduction

As urbanisation and the functional changing of cities continue to increase, realities concerning sustainable development also rise (Phuttharak & Dhiravisit, 2014:70; Reddy & Thomson, 2015:6). Spatial planning is regarded as the management of change, a political process by which a balance is sought between public and private interests, to resolve conflicting demands on space. With constantly changing societal needs (Barendse et al., 2007:3), along with population growth and increasing urbanisation pressures, open public spaces are constantly competing against other land-uses and often these open public spaces are sacrificed to accommodate the increasing urban pressures. Societies and cities call for an approach to reclaim public space for public use, to provide opportunities for people to meet and interact, and to develop a sense of belonging to a place. Social sustainability is becoming a crucial consideration within the urban context (Woodcraft et al., 2011:9), seeking balance between economic developments, environmental challenges and the demands and preferences of modern societies. The question, of how to create the ideal public place (Lynch, 1960), where public space is reclaimed for public use, remains challenging. This research revisited the Third Place concept (Oldenburg, 1999:16) and reflected on sustainable development with the emphasis on social sustainability and the interface with the Third Places concept.

Chapter 2 of this research considered social sustainability as a point of departure in the discourse on the planning of sustainable cities and communities, as accentuated in Sustainable Development Goal 11 (United Nations, 2017). The interface between social sustainability and the notion of Third Places were accordingly discussed, referring to the direct (economic) and indirect (social and environmental) benefits that such spaces could provide, as well as its contribution towards broader sustainable development objectives. Figure 2-1 outlines the structure of Chapter 2.

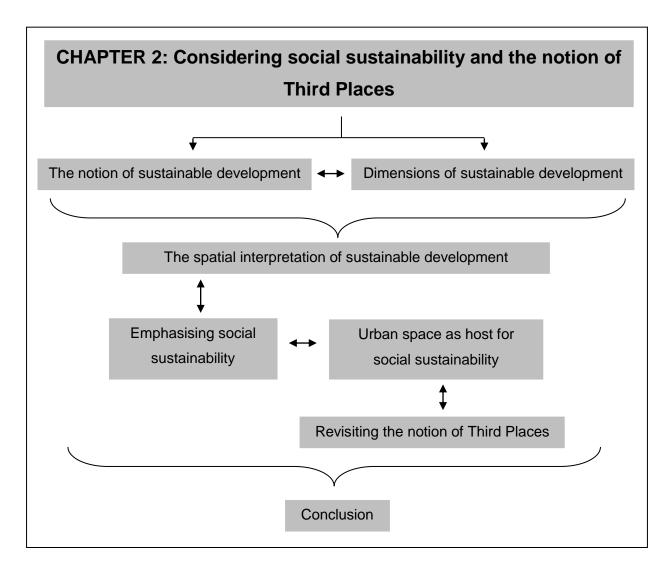


Figure 2-1: Chapter 2 structure

2.2 The notion of sustainable development

The concept "sustainable development", originally coined by the International Union for Conservation of Nature and Natural Resources in their World Conservation Strategy of 1980, was redefined as "development that meets the needs of the present without compromising the ability of future generations to meet their own needs" (Al-Hagla, 2008:163; Harris, 2003:1; Kates *et al.*, 2005:9-10; WCED, 1987:54). The integration of the drive for socioeconomic development and the need to limit its harmful impacts on the physical environment (WCED, 1987:48-57) led to this redefinition. The concept and meaning of sustainable development were expanded on and developed into a more complex concept, implying that sustainable development does imply limits, not absolute limits but limitations imposed by the present state of technology and social organization on environmental resources and by the ability of the biosphere to absorb the effects of human activities. However, technology and social

organization can be both managed and improved to make way for a new era of economic growth.

Sustainable development is not a fixed state of harmony but rather a process of change in which the exploitation of resources, the direction of investments, the orientation of technological development, and institutional change are made consistent with future as well as present needs (WCED, 1987:54-55).

Sustainable development is the pathway to sustainability (Feil & Schreiber, 2017:667-668; Giddings *et al.*, 2002:188). Coined in forestry, sustainability implies never harvesting more than what the forest yields in new growth (Wiersum, 1995:321-329), thereby maintaining well-being over a long, perhaps even indefinite, period of time (Kuhlman & Farrington, 2010:3441). Simon and Bird (2008:4) furthermore refer to sustainability, in the general sense, as the ability to eternally maintain a given process or desired state. As a result, sustainability is found on the fundamental principle of "everything that we need for our survival and well-being depends, either directly or indirectly, on our natural environment" (United States Environmental Protection Agency, 2012). "Sustainability thus creates and maintains the conditions under which humans and nature can exist in productive harmony that permits fulfilling the social, economic, environmental and other requirements of present and future generations" (Al-Hagla, 2008:162-163; Wolch *et al.*, 2014:234). To achieve sustainable development, the needs of future generations depend on how well the social, economic and environmental dimensions of sustainable development are balanced in decision-making today.

2.3 Dimensions of sustainable development

Sustainable development comprises of three widely recognised dimensions which include environmental, social and economic objectives (Mubarak, 2016:15).

According to theory, sustainability will be achieved (European Union, 2010:48; Palacky *et al.*, 2015:1) when the three dimensions (social, environmental and economic) are balanced and in equal harmony (Al-Hagla, 2008:162-163; Cilliers, 2010:9; Cowley, 2015:5; Harris, 2003:1; Schilling, 2010:22; Wolch *et al.*, 2014:234). Such balance is either an overlapping or nested illustration (Thatcher, 2014:749-750), as illustrated in Figure 2-2, capturing the overlapping model versus the nested model in terms of the dimensions of sustainable development. The overlapping equal circles model acknowledges the intersection of economic, environmental and social sustainability factors (Lozano, 2008:1841; Thatcher, 2014:750-751). The size of each circle is often resized, depending on an individual's approach thereto. This illustrates that one factor is leading in terms of another (Moir & Carter, 2012:1480; Thatcher, 2014:749-750). The

nested circle model reflects the co-dependent reality of human society being a wholly-owned subsidiary of the environment (Thatcher, 2014:750). It is important to understand that the economic, social and environmental dimensions of sustainable development are not independent of one another. However, the interlinkages between these three dimensions and their specific concepts are where the focus should be placed.

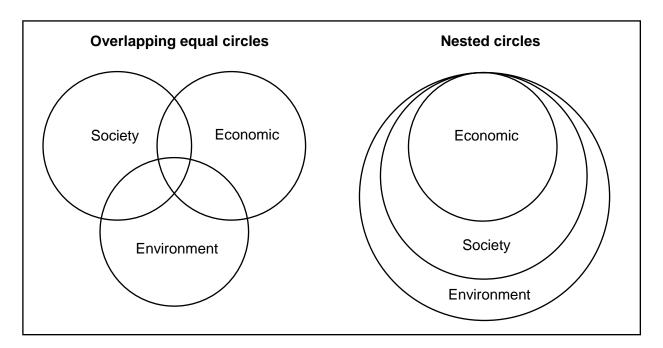


Figure 2-2: Nested versus overlapping dimensions of Sustainable Development

Source: Thatcher (2014:749-250) and Willard (2010)

Each of the three dimensions are considered accordingly to contextualise the notion of sustainability within the theme of this research.

2.3.1 Social dimension of sustainability

History has shown that the long-term social needs of communities have often been deserted (Colantonio, 2009:865; Woodcraft *et al.*, 2011:11; Vallance, 2011:342), with the significance of social sustainability only receiving precedence after the turn of the millennium. This could be due to social sustainability being harder to quantify than that of economic growth or environmental impact, resulting in shared themes associated with social sustainability rather than one overarching definition (Vifell & Soneryd, 2012:23).

Social sustainability is directly related to the leisure and recreational aspect of a place and should achieve and provide opportunity, equity and participation, as evident in an attempt to define social sustainability by Colantonio (2009:872) as: "Concerning how individuals, communities and societies live with each other and set out to achieve the objectives of

development models which they have chosen for themselves, also taking into account the physical boundaries of their places and planet earth as a whole. At a more operational level, social sustainability stems from actions in key thematic areas, encompassing the social realm of individuals and societies, which ranges from capacity building and skills development to environmental and spatial inequalities. In this sense social sustainability blends traditional social policy areas and principles, such as equity and health, with emerging issues concerning participation, needs, social capital, the economy, the environment, and more recently, with the notions of happiness, wellbeing and quality of life".

Five facets to be addressed for a community to be socially sustainable includes, but are not limited to, participation, community stability, pride and sense of place, and safety and security. All of these factors influence social well-being (Dempsey *et al.*, 2011:293-294). A sense of security is furthermore provided, fostering social interaction, child development, human health (physical, mental and psychological) and improving social equality and stability through quality living space and urban liveability (Alidoust *et al.*, 2015:2; Atiqul & Shah, 2011:602; Oldenburg & Brissett, 1982:273; Camp, 2015:18; Commissioner for Children and Young People, 2011:4; Hickman, 2013:25; Jeffres *et al.*, 2009:336; McAllister, 2008:48; Oldenburg, 1999:6-10; Rudofsky, 1969:16). Refer to Section 2.5 of Chapter 2 where social sustainability was emphasised and discussed in depth.

2.3.2 Economic dimension of sustainability

The economic dimension of sustainable development is directly related to economic and financial gain. When referring to the economic sustainability in planning practice, it is meeting the urban service needs of the general public (Basiago, 1999:151). A community is regarded as economically sustainable when there are adequate job and livelihood opportunities, with economic growth and an increase in prosperity (Reddy & Thomson, 2015:8). This leads to economic security. As stated by Basiago (1999:150) "The 'sustainability' that 'economic sustainability' seeks is the 'sustainability' of the economic system itself". Basiago (1999:148) further defines economic sustainability as "the potential to reach qualitatively a new level of socioeconomic, demographic and technological output which in the long run reinforces the foundations of the urban system".

The economic growth of recent decades has come at the expense of the environment, the extent of environmental damage has reached the point where it threatens the progress made in terms of social indicators (The World Bank, 2012:2). It is for this reason that rapid economic growth is a factor hindering sustainability (The World Bank, 2012:5). It is proposed that economic growth should be both socially inclusive and ensure that the earth's natural resources

are able to adequately provide for future development. The sustainability of economic growth is enhanced when there is efficient, clean, resilient and inclusive use of natural resources (The World Bank, 2012:5).

2.3.3 Environmental dimension of sustainability

Environmental sustainability originated due to social concerns (Goodland & Daly, 1996:1003), as societies and economies could not function without a sustainably productive environment (Morelli, 2011:3). This dimension of sustainability seeks to improve social sustainability and human welfare through the protection of natural resources used for human needs (Goodland & Daly, 1996:1003; Reddy & Thomson, 2015:6). Lexicon (2018) defines environmental sustainability as "a state in which the demands placed on the environment can be met without reducing its capacity to allow all people to live well, now and in the future".

Environmental sustainability suggests a process which allows society to exist within the limits of the natural environment, as it plays a key role in enhancing biodiversity and ensuring a healthy environment for people. Accordingly, Basiago (1999:148) attempts to relate environmental sustainability to that of sustainable community development by advocating for the pursuit of an urban form which synthesises land development and nature preservation. In order to establish environmental sustainability, communities should start to live within the boundaries of the environment, as a provider of natural resources limiting waste. Literature refers to environmental benefits of reduced air, noise and water pollution (Atiqul & Shah, 2011:602; Harris, 2003:1; Hickman, 2013:2; Mensah, 2014:1; Ranjha, 2016:1). Ecological diversity, biodiversity and ecosystem conservation are also enhanced and restored. This results in an increase in wildlife habitat, protects native plant gene pools and halts invasion of non-native species, while mitigating the situation of heat island effects.

Sustainability thus lies in the fine balance between the three dimensions and the overlapping objectives of social responsibility, environmental stewardship and protection of resources (Ocampo & Clark, 2015:43) as illustrated in Figure 2-3.

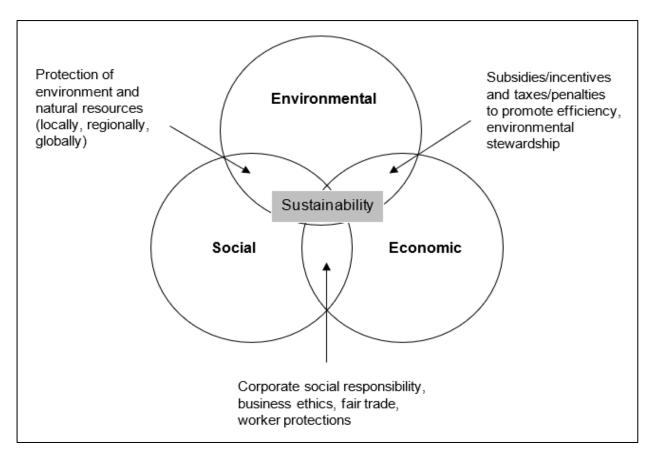


Figure 2-3: Sustainability as the intersection of the three dimensions of sustainable development

Source: Adapted from Rosen and Kishawy (2012:156)

2.4 The spatial interpretation of sustainable development

Sustainability as a universal ambition recently became a land-use issue, encapsulated in the United Nations' Sustainable Development Goal 11, calling for inclusive, safe, resilient and sustainable cities and human settlements (United Nations, 2017). However, many milestones have marked the advances of sustainable development since 1962, with the concept of sustainable development changing as humanity continues to face an overwhelming array of challenges (United Nations, 2017:v). The changes and evolution made to establish the Sustainable Development Goals (Busco *et al.*, 2017; International Institute for Sustainable Development, 2018; United Nations, 2017:v) since the Garden City model (initiated in 1898 by Sir Ebenezer Howard) are illustrated in the timeline captured in Figure 2-4, where the key events thereof are elaborated on. At the start of 2016, the Sustainable Development Goals went into effect and many countries are now fully engaged in the implementation of these goals.

In 1983 the United Nations General Assembly created the United Nations Commission on Environmental and Development (also known as the Brundtland Commission), publishing the Brundtland Report in 1987, which provides one of the most popular definitions of sustainable development. During 1997 the Global Reporting Initiative was formed, and by 2000 the world leaders agreed to the time bound and measurable United Nations Millennium Development Goals to be achieved by 2015. The World Summit held in Johannesburg in 2002 extended on the definition of "sustainable development", whereby the Sustainable Accounting Standards Board (SASB) was created to develop and disseminate the Sustainability Accounting Standards in 2011. During 2012 one of the first of the Millennium Development Goal targets was achieved, in advance of the 2015 deadline. The International Integrated Reporting Council (IIRC) released its framework based on the concept of multi-capitals to support the integration of financial and pre-financial data during 2013 and the United Nations General Assembly adopted the 2030 Agenda for Sustainable Development, accompanied by a list of Sustainable Development Goals. Finally, during 2016, the seventeen Sustainable Development Goals of the 2030 Agenda for Sustainable Development came into force.

The Garden City model World leaders agree to The seventeen Sustainable The International Integrated The Sustainable Accounting Development Goals of initiated by Sir Ebenezer the timebound and Reporting Council (IIRC) Standards Board (SASB) is The United Nations Howard, a method of measurable United the 2030 Agenda for Sustainable releases its framework based on created to develop and Brundtland Report, urban planning in which Nations Millennium Development come into force as the concept of multi-capitals to disseminate sustainability providing one of the most self-contained communities Development Goals to adopted by world leaders support the integration of accounting standards popular definitions of be achieved by 2015 in September 2015 are surrounded by financial and pre-financial data sustainable development "greenbelts" 2016 2011 1987 2000 1898 1997 2012 2015 1983 2002 The World Summit in The Global Reporting Initiative is One of the first of the Millennium **United Nations General** The United Nations General Johannesburg extends the formed by the United States-Development Goal targets is Assembly creates the

on Environment and Development, otherwise known as the Brundtland Commission

United Nations Commission

based non-profit organisation Ceres (formerly the Coalition for Environmental Responsible Economies) and Tellus Institute with the support of the United Nations Environment Programme definition of "sustainable development" to embrace not only environmental aspects but also social inclusion and economic development

achieved, in advance of the 2015 deadline.

Rio+20: Securing agreement on "greening" world economies through a range of smart measures for clean energy, decent jobs and fairer and more sustainable use of resources

Assembly adopts the 2030 Agenda for Sustainable Development, accompanied by a list of Sustainable Development Goals, consisting of 17 objectives and 169 targets

From Garden Cities to Sustainable Development Goals Figure 2-4:

Author's own construction based on Busco et al. (2017); International Institute for Sustainable Development (2018) Source:

Officially published under the title "Transforming Our World: the 2030 Agenda for Sustainable Development", seventeen global goals were set as a framework to improve overall sustainable development (United Nations, 2017:3). Leaders from 193 countries shared in their visions for an improved future. The ambitious plan of the seventeen Sustainable Development Goals were created, with the United Nations Development Program being one of the leading organisations working towards achieving the goals by 2030.

The seventeen Sustainable Development Goals put forward were intended to be universal, focussing on priority areas. The vision for these goals were for them to be "action-orientated, concise and easy to communicate, limited in number, aspirational, global in nature and universally applicable to all countries". This was envisioned whilst taking different realities and challenges, level of development and specific policies and priorities of the different countries into account (Osborn *et al.*, 2015:3).

More than half of the world's population reside within urban areas, and this increases daily (Svetlana, 2013:72). This rapid population growth within cities has led to the booming effect of megacities, where cities are forced to expand, creating extreme concentrated poverty and slum conditions due to governments struggling to accommodate and provide to the rising population. Goal 11 of the Sustainable Development Goals highlighted the importance of making cities and human settlements inclusive, safe, resilient and sustainable. As Goal 11 is primarily focused on urban planning approaches and the spatial interpretation of sustainability, it was emphasised in this research, although the remaining goals are recognised as integral in realising sustainable development.

2.4.1 Planning for sustainable communities

A sustainable community is defined by Bridger and Luloff (1999:381) as one which "seeks to maintain a balance and improve the economic, environmental and social characteristics of an area so its members can continue to lead healthy, productive and enjoyable lives there". A sustainable community meets the needs of its residents, enhances and protects its environment, and promotes a more humane local society. The development of an ideal sustainable community can then be defined along five identified dimensions (Bridger & Luloff, 1999:383; United States Environmental Protection Agency, 2012), including local economic diversity increase, self-reliance, recycling of waste and reduction in energy consumption, protection of biodiversity, and stewardship of natural resources and social justice. A sustainable community furthermore underwrites objectives reflecting mutual respect in terms of the natural environment, as well as human nature (Geis & Kutzmark, 2006:44), and should essentially strive to achieve specific characteristics and goals as reflected in Table 2-1.

 Table 2-1:
 Main characteristics and goals of a sustainable community

| Place a high value on quality of life A sustainable community recognises that communities are first and foremost for people, with the primary objective of the planning process to improve the quality of life (socially, economically, psychologically and spiritually) of its residents. Respect for the natural environment A sustainable community regards nature's systems and components as essential to its well-being and provides access to nature through metropolitan parks, open space zones, and urban gardens. The sensitive interface between the natural and built environment is also understood, where these communities develop in a way that will support and complement nature, avoiding ecological disasters. Infuse technology with purpose A sustainable community uses appropriate technology, while ensuring that technology in the built environment is a means to an end, rather than an end unto itself. Emphasising learning and understanding how existing and new technology can serve and improve communities, sustainable communities set clear and measurable goals for what technology should achieve. | CHARACTERISTIC | GOAL |
|---|-------------------------|---|
| process to improve the quality of life (socially, economically, psychologically and spiritually) of its residents. Respect for the natural environment A sustainable community regards nature's systems and components as essential to its well-being and provides access to nature through metropolitan parks, open space zones, and urban gardens. The sensitive interface between the natural and built environment is also understood, where these communities develop in a way that will support and complement nature, avoiding ecological disasters. Infuse technology with purpose A sustainable community uses appropriate technology, while ensuring that technology in the built environment is a means to an end, rather than an end unto itself. Emphasising learning and understanding how existing and new technology can serve and improve communities, sustainable communities set clear and measurable goals for what technology should achieve. | Place a high value on | A sustainable community recognises that communities are first |
| Respect for the natural environment A sustainable community regards nature's systems and components as essential to its well-being and provides access to nature through metropolitan parks, open space zones, and urban gardens. The sensitive interface between the natural and built environment is also understood, where these communities develop in a way that will support and complement nature, avoiding ecological disasters. Infuse technology with purpose A sustainable community uses appropriate technology, while ensuring that technology in the built environment is a means to an end, rather than an end unto itself. Emphasising learning and understanding how existing and new technology can serve and improve communities, sustainable communities set clear and measurable goals for what technology should achieve. | quality of life | and foremost for people, with the primary objective of the planning |
| Respect for the natural environment A sustainable community regards nature's systems and components as essential to its well-being and provides access to nature through metropolitan parks, open space zones, and urban gardens. The sensitive interface between the natural and built environment is also understood, where these communities develop in a way that will support and complement nature, avoiding ecological disasters. Infuse technology with purpose Infuse technology with purpose A sustainable community uses appropriate technology, while ensuring that technology in the built environment is a means to an end, rather than an end unto itself. Emphasising learning and understanding how existing and new technology can serve and improve communities, sustainable communities set clear and measurable goals for what technology should achieve. | | process to improve the quality of life (socially, economically, |
| environment components as essential to its well-being and provides access to nature through metropolitan parks, open space zones, and urban gardens. The sensitive interface between the natural and built environment is also understood, where these communities develop in a way that will support and complement nature, avoiding ecological disasters. Infuse technology with purpose A sustainable community uses appropriate technology, while ensuring that technology in the built environment is a means to an end, rather than an end unto itself. Emphasising learning and understanding how existing and new technology can serve and improve communities, sustainable communities set clear and measurable goals for what technology should achieve. | | psychologically and spiritually) of its residents. |
| nature through metropolitan parks, open space zones, and urban gardens. The sensitive interface between the natural and built environment is also understood, where these communities develop in a way that will support and complement nature, avoiding ecological disasters. Infuse technology with purpose A sustainable community uses appropriate technology, while ensuring that technology in the built environment is a means to an end, rather than an end unto itself. Emphasising learning and understanding how existing and new technology can serve and improve communities, sustainable communities set clear and measurable goals for what technology should achieve. | Respect for the natural | A sustainable community regards nature's systems and |
| gardens. The sensitive interface between the natural and built environment is also understood, where these communities develop in a way that will support and complement nature, avoiding ecological disasters. Infuse technology with purpose A sustainable community uses appropriate technology, while ensuring that technology in the built environment is a means to an end, rather than an end unto itself. Emphasising learning and understanding how existing and new technology can serve and improve communities, sustainable communities set clear and measurable goals for what technology should achieve. | environment | components as essential to its well-being and provides access to |
| environment is also understood, where these communities develop in a way that will support and complement nature, avoiding ecological disasters. Infuse technology with purpose A sustainable community uses appropriate technology, while ensuring that technology in the built environment is a means to an end, rather than an end unto itself. Emphasising learning and understanding how existing and new technology can serve and improve communities, sustainable communities set clear and measurable goals for what technology should achieve. | | nature through metropolitan parks, open space zones, and urban |
| develop in a way that will support and complement nature, avoiding ecological disasters. Infuse technology with purpose A sustainable community uses appropriate technology, while ensuring that technology in the built environment is a means to an end, rather than an end unto itself. Emphasising learning and understanding how existing and new technology can serve and improve communities, sustainable communities set clear and measurable goals for what technology should achieve. | | gardens. The sensitive interface between the natural and built |
| avoiding ecological disasters. Infuse technology with purpose A sustainable community uses appropriate technology, while ensuring that technology in the built environment is a means to an end, rather than an end unto itself. Emphasising learning and understanding how existing and new technology can serve and improve communities, sustainable communities set clear and measurable goals for what technology should achieve. | | environment is also understood, where these communities |
| Infuse technology with purpose A sustainable community uses appropriate technology, while ensuring that technology in the built environment is a means to an end, rather than an end unto itself. Emphasising learning and understanding how existing and new technology can serve and improve communities, sustainable communities set clear and measurable goals for what technology should achieve. | | develop in a way that will support and complement nature, |
| ensuring that technology in the built environment is a means to an end, rather than an end unto itself. Emphasising learning and understanding how existing and new technology can serve and improve communities, sustainable communities set clear and measurable goals for what technology should achieve. | | avoiding ecological disasters. |
| end, rather than an end unto itself. Emphasising learning and understanding how existing and new technology can serve and improve communities, sustainable communities set clear and measurable goals for what technology should achieve. | Infuse technology with | A sustainable community uses appropriate technology, while |
| understanding how existing and new technology can serve and improve communities, sustainable communities set clear and measurable goals for what technology should achieve. | purpose | ensuring that technology in the built environment is a means to an |
| improve communities, sustainable communities set clear and measurable goals for what technology should achieve. | | end, rather than an end unto itself. Emphasising learning and |
| measurable goals for what technology should achieve. | | understanding how existing and new technology can serve and |
| | | improve communities, sustainable communities set clear and |
| | | measurable goals for what technology should achieve. |
| Optimise key resources A sustainable community takes inventory of its human, natural, | Optimise key resources | A sustainable community takes inventory of its human, natural, |
| and economic resources, understanding their finite quality. It | | and economic resources, understanding their finite quality. It |
| ensures that forests are not overused, people are not | | ensures that forests are not overused, people are not |
| underemployed, and the places of the built environment are not | | underemployed, and the places of the built environment are not |
| stagnant and empty, while reducing waste and reusing resources | | stagnant and empty, while reducing waste and reusing resources |
| create conditions in which all these resources can be used to their | | create conditions in which all these resources can be used to their |
| fullest and best potential without harming or diminishing them. | | fullest and best potential without harming or diminishing them. |
| Maintain scale and A sustainable community recognises the importance of scale and | Maintain scale and | A sustainable community recognises the importance of scale and |
| capacity capacity regarding the natural and human environment, ensuring | capacity | capacity regarding the natural and human environment, ensuring |
| that the environment is not overdeveloped, overbuilt, overused or | | that the environment is not overdeveloped, overbuilt, overused or |
| overpopulated. It recognises the signs of tension that indicate | | overpopulated. It recognises the signs of tension that indicate |
| when the environment is overstressed and can adjust its demands | | when the environment is overstressed and can adjust its demands |
| on the environment to avoid pollution, natural disaster and social | | on the environment to avoid pollution, natural disaster and social |
| disintegration. | | disintegration. |

Source: Author's own construction based on Geis and Kutzmark (2006:44); Schlebusch (2015:62)

Urbanisation and city growth as transformative forces for development are recognised and motivates the endorsing of sustainable development goal (Goal 11) to make cities and human settlements inclusive, safe, resilient and sustainable. These elements have a direct impact on the social well-being of the residents within urban areas. When cities are safe, resilient and inclusive, an element of welcoming, sense of belonging, community cohesion and freedom arise within the people who dwell within these cities. From a spatial planning perspective, the connections between social sustainability and the opportunities provided by the physical environment are becoming more apparent as land-use management is set to guide urban growth to provide high-quality living environments.

2.5 Emphasising social sustainability

Social sustainability forms an integrative part of sustainable development (cross-reference to Section 2.3). Although limited research to guide urban planning approaches towards enhanced social sustainability exist, this dimension of sustainable development has become increasingly influential in the urban planning context.

Sachs (1999:16) stated that it is still unclear whether the concept of social sustainability implies the social preconditions for sustainable development or the need to sustain specific structures and customs in communities and societies. While there exists various social research studies and policy documents, these have rarely been integrated into sustainability frameworks. This results in the concept of social sustainability often being under-theorised or oversimplified, with few attempts in defining social sustainability as a dimension of sustainable development, consequently allowing for an unclear relationship between the different dimensions of sustainable development (Colantonio, 2009:866). Assefa and Frostell (2007:65) argue that social sustainability is concerned with the finality of sustainable development, while economic and environmental sustainability has to do with the goals and instruments of achieving sustainable development. Hardoy *et al.* (1992) contribute to this statement by interpreting social sustainability purely as the social condition necessary to support environmental sustainability.

Adding to Assefa and Frostell (2007:65) and Hardoy *et al.* (1992), a strong definition of social sustainability is given within a society when specific arrangements satisfy a specific set of human needs. These needs and arrangements should be shaped in a way where reproductive capabilities are preserved over a long period of time. Social sustainability rests on the fulfilment of participation, a shared sense of place, social interaction, and improved quality of life in terms of all segments of the population through human well-being (Biart, 2002:6; Littig & Griebler, 2005:72; Sachs, 1999:27). Social sustainability within urban areas, forming part of the broader sustainable development principle, does however not solely rest on the planning of idyllic public

places that provide human and environmental quality and encourage sociability by setting a social stage that is safe, integrated and accessible.

Social sustainability has furthermore been encapsulated in the concepts of social cohesion and social capital as two interrelated ideas (Carrasco & Bilal, 2016:127), and although various authors have engaged the concepts of social cohesion and social capital, definitions have remained ambiguous and questioned (Cloete, 2014:6; Spicker, 2014:95). Social cohesion is defined as the extent to which a society is socially just, coherent, united and functional, providing positive social relationships within a bonded network and environment that allows its members to flourish in solidarity (Cortese *et al.*, 2013:2052; Carrasco & Bilal, 2016:128). Referred to as "the glue that holds society together" (Janmaat, 2011:61), or a society that "works towards the well-being of all the members, fights exclusion and marginalisation, creates a sense of belonging, promotes trust and offers members the opportunity of upward social mobility" (OECD, 2011:51).

Social capital, on the other hand, is defined as a resource produced by participating in social networks and civic institutions (Stone & Hughes, 2002:62). It is supported by trust that accommodates shared exchanges, mutual support, social networks and collective action to achieve communal objectives (Kawachi, 1999:121; Putnam, 2000:21; Matthews & Besemer, 2015:189; Carrasco & Bilal, 2016:128). Mainly influenced by the work of Pierre Bourdieu (1985), James Coleman (1988, 1990) and Robert Putnam (1993, 2000), social capital is referred to as a range of resources available to individuals thanks to their participation in social networks (Herreros, 2004:6). Two approaches are highlighted within the concept of social capital (Bartkus & Davis, 2009:4). Firstly, the functional approach, which describes social capital as the "features of social organizations, such as trust, norms and networks that can improve the efficiency of society by facilitating coordinating actions". Secondly, the descriptive approach (Nahapiet & Ghoshal, 1998:243), referring to social capital as "the sum of actual and potential resources embedded within, available through and derived from the network of relationships possessed by individuals or social unit". It is evident from the literature defining social capital that the concept is not an individual endeavour, it is however the sum of efforts by individuals that participate together in any form of social network to create or build social capital, resulting in public or common good.

The Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development (OECD 2011:53) draws attention to this narrow understanding of social cohesion as social capital, emphasising that it is a broad concept that covers several dimensions at once, like a sense of belonging, active participation, trust, exclusion and mobility. The difference found between social capital and social cohesion (OECD, 2011:53) then agrees with the following definition, where social capital

refers to a group of individuals whilst social cohesion includes the entire society: "Social capital is an individual's sacrifices (time, effort, and consumption) made in an effort to co-operate with others', whilst social cohesion on the other hand refers to 'a characteristic of society which depends on the accumulated social capital" (Oxoby, 2009:1136).

This research defines social sustainability in terms of key elements that are drawn from the literature in terms of a sustainable community. Due to social activity being interconnected with the physical context in which it transpires, the connections between social sustainability and the opportunities provided by the physical environment become apparent. Poor conditions incite anti-social behaviour, automatically fuelling a negative impact on social sustainability (Nash & Christie, 2003:47). Chan and Lee (2008:245) therefore argues, for a project to be socially sustainable, the creation of a harmonious living environment, improving the general quality of life and reducing social inequality should be evident. Social sustainability, however, is enhanced through social capital, social cohesion, a sense of community, networks and interactional platforms (Cloete, 2014:1-2). To enhance social sustainability, a platform should be created for community cohesion and social inclusion. This opportunity is provided within the public spaces of urban areas. Public space could be regained for public use, enhancing the public dimensions of space, understood primarily in terms of formal access by citizens, and the extent to which the formal space and behaviour within it are visible to all (Cowley, 2015:7).

2.6 Urban space as host for social sustainability

An ongoing subject of the concept, role, definition and value of urban space and place resurfaced within academic, political and professional debates (European Union, 2010:48; Harrison & Dourish, 1996:3; Lefebvre, 1991:1; PPS, 2015) and has been widely discussed and theorised by many researchers spanning disciplinary bounds (see Cresswell, 2004; De Certeau, 1988; Lefebvre, 1991:1). As portrayed in existing literature and policy documents, the distinction between "space" and "place" is rather difficult to establish. The terms "space" and "place" are often used interchangeably (Smith, 2000:45) as seen in the following definition of "public space" extracted from the 2013 Charter of Public Space, an important reference guide adopted in 2014 by UN-Habitat, the United Nations Human Settlements Programme: "Public spaces are key elements of individual and social well-being, the places of a community's collective life, expressions of the diversity of their common natural and cultural richness and a foundation of their identity".

Cresswell (2004:8) states "the concept of space is more abstract than that of place. When we think of space, we tend to think of the outer space, or the geometric space, areas and volumes". Furthermore, as argued by Lefebvre (1991:1) and Massey (2005:23), space cannot be

contemplated as an existential fact, it is rather a social product that is constantly under construction. Space can therefore be thought of in a broader definition, and place as portions of space containing meaning within. This is due to place largely existing within space (Agnew, 2011:6; Harrison & Dourish, 1996:3), whereas space accordingly becomes a place due to the space acquiring meaning for an individual (Al-Bishawi & Ghadban, 2011:73; Cho *et al.*, 2011:393; Harrison & Dourish, 1996:3; Thrift, 2003:95; Tuan, 2005:8).

It can be accepted that a place is generally a space with meaning added to it. This definition sets place apart from, although always connected to, space. Space however includes more than its physical nature and is constructed by means of the context in which people live, their social, political and visual environment (Schofield & Szymanski, 2011:1-11; Strydom, 2014:23). Therefore, space as well as the people within urban areas are two related concepts which cannot be separated. It is a mutual process where people create space, whilst space simultaneously affects them (Al-Bishawi & Ghadban, 2011:73; Parker, 2014; PPS, 2015).

It can further be argued that space is attended by humans, but never inhabited by them, whereas according to Tuan (2005:8), place is understood as being the space experienced by us humans. Space being accordingly a movement and place the pause (Madanipour, 1996:23). Harrison and Dourish (1996:1) further opinionated that "space is the opportunity and place is the understood reality" and as a result people are located in "space", but act in "place". This results in space being considered less important than place (Sack 1997:16; Saloojee, 2012:17).

As place is unique and cannot be duplicated within another setting, place is identified as being heterogeneous (Strydom, 2014:23). Place consist of allowing a diverse identity, being abstract and having a value-laden character. In contrast to place, space tends to be more uniform in terms of its existence, thereby constituting space as homogeneous (Strydom, 2014:23). For this reason, space is duplicable within another setting, as it consists of a singular identity, being value-free. However, it is argued that space and place are incorporated into one another where the one can be identified as the other (Harrison & Dourih, 1996:3; Madanipour, 1996:23; Tuan, 2005:8).

Space and place continue to be related notions, and often the closeness of their relationship means that there is no clear explication of their difference. The distinction between space and place remains an important one, due to place consisting of a specific function and form and the potential to enhance social sustainability. Place is space with human value or "meaning" added to it, and throughout this research the objective remains that all spaces could become places, as place is specific, and space is general. The comparisons existing between space and place are illustrated in Table 2-2.

Table 2-2: Conceptual comparison of space and place

| SPACE | PLACE |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Concrete | Abstract |
| Objective | Subjective |
| Three-dimensional | Four-dimensional |
| Homogeneous | Heterogeneous |
| Opportunity | Reality |
| Disconnected | Connected |
| Duplicable | Unique |
| Value-free | Value-laden |
| Common | Distinctive |
| Uniformity, singular identity | Diversity, multiple identities |
| Infinite | Finite |
| Conceptual | Tangible |
| General | Specific |

Source: Author's own construction based on Harrison and Dourish (1996:3); Strydom (2014:23)

For the purpose of this research and derived from the various definitions of space and place (Agnew, 2011:6; Al-Bishawi & Ghadban, 2011:73; Cho *et al.*, 2011:393; Cresswell, 2004:8; Harrison & Dourish, 1996:3; Lefebvre, 1991:1: Massey, 2005:23; Thrift, 2003:95; Tuan, 2005:8), space within urban areas is accepted as open pockets of land, planned or unplanned for, existing within the urban areas of towns and cities. These spaces are not roofed by any architectural structure and contribute to the environment in a diminutive way, being devoid of meaning and value these spaces have minimum impacts on their users. A place, on the other hand, exists within a space when that space is given meaning and purpose.

Hendri Lefebvre (1991:190) stated "to change life, we must first change space". Focusing on this statement, the aim is for space to be reclaimed for public use. This is where space is transformed by applying various tools, approaches and inputs, modifying the space to ultimately become a place. Accordingly, a place is only achieved when movement, interaction (with human and nature), activities and a contextual meaning (Trancik, 1986:112) are evident within the space. Place is different from space, but simultaneously intertwined with it, providing a person-place-process attachment as illustrated in Figure 2-5.

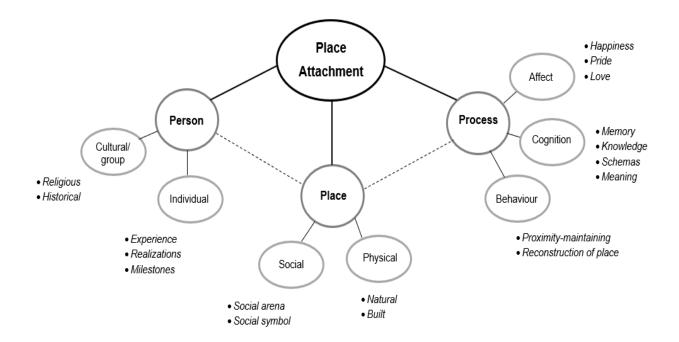


Figure 2-5: Place attachment

Source: Adapted from Scannell and Gifford (2010:2)

The attachment to place is highly influenced by an individual in accordance with his or her personal experiences (Giuliani, 2003:137-170; Low & Altman, 1992). Emphasising the emotional bond between person and place, the three-dimensional person-process-place framework can be used to plan and encourage the use of public spaces (Scannell & Gifford, 2010:1).

Interpreting Figure 2-5 the dimension of "person" refers to individually or collectively determined meaning. This personal dimension of the place attachment occurs at both an individual level (involving the personal connections one has to a place) and a group level (where attachment is comprised of the symbolic meaning of a place shared among users). While the psychological process dimension refers to affect, cognitive and behavioural components, the place dimension accentuates the spatial level and the prominence of social or physical elements (Scannell & Gifford, 2010:2). The place dimension is perhaps the most important dimension of place attachment and has been divided into two levels, social and physical place attachment, at a home, neighbourhood and city spatial scale. Both the physical and social attachments of the place dimension influence the overall bond, the social ties, sense of belonging to the neighbourhood and familiarity. Physical attachment, also referred to as rootedness, is predicted by ownership (Mazumdar & Mazumdar, 2004:386; Mesch & Manor, 1998:228).

The person-process-place relationship as set out in Figure 2-5 aids in understanding the attachment of a place and is extended on through introducing Oldenburg's (1999:16) Third Place concept.

2.7 Revisiting the notion of Third Places

This research considers the concept of Third Places (Oldenburg, 1999:16), introduced as any space other than our homes (First Place) or work (Second Place), manifesting as a component of well-defined public places designed to enhance civic identity, quality of life, social capital and community revitalisation, whilst improving economic development (Alidoust *et al.*, 2015:2; Camp, 2015:2; Liu *et al.*, 2007:1). Third Places are understood as public places on neutral ground where individuals and communities wish to gather and interact, outside of the work or home realm (Oldenburg, 1999:41). It is those places of regular, voluntary, informal, and happily anticipated gatherings of individuals beyond the realms of home and work. Although Third Places are unknown and not necessarily permanent places within urban areas, Third Places are known for their qualities that support social ability and place attachment. These Third Places serve as central hubs for local social interaction and includes a wide range of places (e.g. cafes, parks, coffee shops, bookstores, bars, hair salons, libraries) (Alidoust *et al.*, 2015:2; Harris, 2003:3; Oldenburg, 1999:7).

Oldenburg (1999:16) coined the term Third Place to ideally represent public places where regular, voluntary gatherings of individuals take place (Camp, 2015:2). Literature concerning this concept has taken Oldenburg's view on Third Places to new heights. Without having to plan or prepare for it, Third Places exist spontaneously where movement occurs in a familiar and casual environment (Crick, 2011:1; Mehta & Basson, 2010:780). An informal social platform is accordingly created, lending a public balance to informal social interaction and experiences without requiring it. Within these Third Places the notion of "being public" is overt and the social interaction changes from passive (shared experience where no direct interaction is required) to active (direct interaction) (Bernhardt & Stoll, 2010:1).

Although the literature regarding Third Places (Oldenburg & Brissett, 1982:267-271) involves different disciplines, Crick (2011:1) argues that despite the consideration of different types of Third Places (the virtual, the spectacular, the commercial), conversation (that is social interaction) should remain the main activity. Crick's conceptualisations of Third Places do not fit well with that of Oldenburg's (1999:16). New physical areas, proposed as potential Third Places, should display social niceties, people engaged in casual social interaction, people lingering in these areas and people enjoying comfortable seating. These aspects all lead to continued use

of a place, creating what is known as regularity, a reoccurrence of people within space (Suire *et al.*, 2017:1-2).

2.7.1 Characteristics of Third Places

Third Places are portrayed as fostering informal social interaction and consists of numerous characteristics (Camp, 2015:15; Crick, 2011:3; Hickman 2013:5; Oldenburg, 1999:20-42), where space is the resource in creating the Third Place. Introduced to enhance social sustainability, the characteristics compiled by Oldenburg (1999:20-42) include neutral ground, as leveller, conversation as the main activity, accessibility and accommodation, the regulars, low profiles, playful mood and finally home away from home.

The first characteristic, providing *neutral ground*, should offer different settings and experiences. These Third Places also serve as *levellers*, where all people are accepted and on level standing. As such, this neutral ground characteristic provides the place, and the levelling aspect sets the stage for the main activity of conversation. Due to protection from one's status, people can converse, interact and socialise. The requirement of the Third Place's *low profile* allows for regulars and patrons to set the tone of the place. Although *conversation is the main activity* in Third Places, the tone of conversation the regulars set is one of playfulness. This *playful* nature of the Third Place is important in terms of comfortability, the unmistakable mark of true acceptance in a Third Place is not that of being taken seriously, but being included in play (Bernhardt & Stoll, 2010:1-2; Camp, 2015:15-17). Convenience and location are connected to the component of *accessibility and accommodating*. Informal gathering places near one's residence ensure interaction, as one is more likely to encounter familiar faces. An open invitation to linger is a critical characteristic of a successful Third Place and encourages *regularity*. Finally, the Third Place should act as a *home away from home* concerning the psychological comfort and support provided.

Oldenburg (1999:22-42) was explicit in laying out the characteristics of a Third Place. These characteristics, reflected above, aid in detailing the sustainable development benefits of such Third places.

2.7.2 Third Places in relation to sustainable development

Although Third Places serve many functions to individuals and surrounding communities (Oldenburg, 1999:7-10), they are defined by regularity and being closely knit with social sustainability (Camp, 2015:3). A broad theoretical base for understanding the importance of such spaces in modern society calls for specialists to reflect on the social impact through

emphasising the benefits Third Places offer to communities and surrounding environments (Stein, 2003:4).

Camp (2015:18) and Oldenburg and Brissett (1982:273) contribute to establishing the importance of Third Places within urban areas by specifically reflecting on the personal benefits of these places. They identify benefits such as novelty, providing something new or interesting, perspective, providing people with a healthy mindset and spiritual tonic, inferring that people have souls that need to be filled with a form of substance offered within these Third Places. Camp (2015:18) continues to argue that the personal benefits identified and detailed by Oldenburg are vast. The benefits provided by Third Places to community quality of life are also reflected on by Jeffres et al. (2009:336). They reflect on the benefits of a perfect social experience within Third Places, mainly sociological benefits, and the degree of positive impacts it provides to people. Hickman (2013:2) highlights that the provision of Third Places performs a key social function within urban areas through providing a "public" social space. Through these public social spaces, the symbolic importance and benefits are recognised as being a market of the "health" and "vibrancy" of the urban area (Hickman, 2013:23). Third Places are also considered as critical components to diversifying and sustaining a strong local economy, while fostering and shaping community cohesion and improving overall economic development and social capital (Cabras & Mount, 2017:1).

The social benefits of Third Places are thus directly related to the leisure and recreational aspect of space itself. Social contact (communication), health and well-being of communities are directly influenced. Third Places also contribute towards environmental and economic benefits (Harris, 2003:1; Mensah, 2014:1; Palacky *et al.*, 2015:5; Power, 2004:4; Ranjha, 2016:1). For this reason, the benefits put forward in Table 2-3 are divided into direct (economic) and indirect (social and environmental) benefits.

Table 2-3: Direct and indirect benefits of Third Places

| BENEFIT | REFERENCE | | |
|--|---|--|--|
| INDIRECT: SOCIAL SUSTAINABILITY | | | |
| Aid in unifying neighbourhoods | Jeffres et al. (2009:336); Oldenburg (1999:6-10) | | |
| Bring youth and adults into association with one another (social stage) | Oldenburg (1999:6-10) | | |
| Improve neighbourhood relations to encourage community cohesion: | Alidoust et al. (2015:2); Camp (2015:18); Oldenburg (1999:6-10) | | |
| - Increased both real and perceived security and safety | | | |
| - Pedestrian-friendly areas | | | |
| Provides for entertainment | Camp (2015:18); Oldenburg (1999:6-10) | | |
| Foster social interaction, integration and civic pride through recreation: | Alidoust et al. (2015:4); Oldenburg & Brissett (1982:273); Camp | | |
| - Forming friendships | (2015:18); Hickman (2013:25) | | |
| - Important for retired people | | | |
| - Tourist attraction | | | |
| - Encourage volunteerism | | | |
| Child Development | Commissioner for Children and Young People (2011:4); McAllister | | |
| - Positive impact on development stages, health and well-being | (2008:48) | | |
| - Early interaction enhances social skills and improve confidence levels | | | |
| - Identifying future abilities and identities | | | |
| Human health and well-being (physical, mental & psychological) | Atiqul & Shah (2011:602); Oldenburg & Brissett (1982:273); Camp | | |
| | (2015:19); Hickman (2013:2) | | |
| Improved quality of life: Urban liveability (quality living space) | Jeffres et al. (2009:336); | | |
| Beautification: Sense of Community & Sense of Place | Jeffres <i>et al.</i> (2009:336); Rudofsky (1969:16) | | |
| Promoted social equality and stability | Atiqul & Shah (2011:602); Camp (2015:19) | | |

| INDIRECT: ENVIRONMENTAL SUSTAINABILITY | | | |
|--|---|--|--|
| Reduced air, noise and water pollution | Atiqul & Shah (2011:602) | | |
| Create, enhance and restore ecological diversity, biodiversity and ecosystem | Harris (2003:1); Mensah (2014:1); Ranjha (2016:1) | | |
| conservation: | | | |
| Increases wildlife habitat and saves species from extinction | | | |
| Protects native plant gene pools and halts invasion of non-native species | | | |
| Mitigate the occurrence of heat island effect | | | |
| Contribution to aesthetic value: Substituting grey infrastructure in urban areas | Hickman (2013:2) | | |

| DIRECT: ECONOMIC SUSTAINABILITY | | | |
|---|--|--|--|
| Increased neighbourhood and property value by increasing attractiveness | Atiqul & Shah (2011:602) | | |
| Increased economic vitality | Palacky et al. (2015:5); Power (2004:4); Ranjha (2016:1); Cabras | | |
| | (2017:1) | | |
| Support local economies (increased business confidence) | Palacky et al. (2015:5); Power (2004:4); Ranjha (2016:1); Cabras | | |
| | (2017:1) | | |
| Vibrant green Third Place and pedestrian-friendly street contributes to | | | |
| customer satisfaction, enhancing the economic return of a mixed-use | | | |
| development | | | |

Source: Author's own construction based on Alidoust *et al.* (2015:2); Atiqul & Shah (2011:602); Oldenburg and Brissett (1982:273); Cabras and Mount (2017:1); Camp (2015:18); Commissioner for Children and Young People (2011:4); Harris (2003:1); Hickman (2013:2); Jeffres *et al.* (2009:336); McAllister (2008:48); Mensah (2014:1); Oldenburg (1999:6-10); Palacky *et al.* (2015:5); Power (2004:4); Ranjha (2016:1); Rudofsky (1969:16)

Research conducted on the benefits that Third Places provide suggests that Third Places are more critical to the well-being and quality of life of developing countries and the development of their communities.

2.8 Conclusion

Social sustainability was highlighted in Chapter 2 as one of the three dimensions of sustainable development (cross-reference to Section 2.3.1). From a spatial planning perspective, an interface is evident between social sustainability and the opportunities provided by the physical environment to guide urban growth towards high-quality living (social) environments.

The notion of Third Place planning was revisited in this chapter and introduced as a solution to address complex urban problems from a social sustainability perspective. Although a broad theoretical base for understanding the importance and benefits (cross-reference to Section 2.7.2) of Third Places in modern society exists, the interface between Third Places and social sustainability has not been quantified. As Third Places conform to the objectives of sustainable development (evident from Table 2-3), it could be a valuable planning approach towards realising broader sustainability objectives in the spatial planning context. This interface between sustainable development and the notion of Third Places is captured in Table 2-4, illustrating the drivers of social sustainability in accordance to the characteristics of Third Places.

Table 2-4: Interface between the drivers of social sustainability and characteristics of Third Places

| DRIVERS OF SOCIAL SUSTAINABILITY | CHARACTERISTICS OF THE THIRD PLACE CONCEPT |
|--|---|
| Aid in unifying neighbourhoods | Neutral ground; The Third Place as leveller; Conversation is the main activity; Accessibility and |
| | accommodation; The regulars; A low profile; The mood is playful; A home away from home |
| Bring youth and adults into association with one another (social stage) | Neutral ground; Conversation is the main activity; Accessibility and accommodation; The regulars; A low |
| | profile; The mood is playful |
| Improve neighbourhood relations to encourage community cohesion: | Neutral ground; The Third Place as leveller; Accessibility and accommodation; The regulars; A low profile; |
| - Increased both real and perceived security and safety | A home away from home |
| - Pedestrian-friendly areas | |
| Provides for entertainment | Conversation is the main activity; Accessibility and accommodation; The mood is playful |
| Foster social interaction, integration and civic pride through recreation: | Neutral ground; Conversation is the main activity; Accessibility and accommodation; The regulars; The |
| - Forming friendships | mood is playful |
| - Important for retired people | |
| - Tourist attraction | |
| - Encourage volunteerism | |
| Child Development | Neutral ground; Conversation is the main activity; Accessibility and accommodation; The mood is playful; A |
| - Positive impact on development stages, health and well-being | home away from home |
| - Early interaction enhances social skills and improve confidence levels | |
| - Identifying future abilities and identities | |
| Human health and well-being (physical, mental & psychological) | Neutral ground; The Third Place as leveller; Conversation is the main activity; The mood is playful; A home |
| | away from home |
| Improved quality of life: Urban liveability (quality living space) | Neutral ground; Accessibility and accommodation; The mood is playful; A home away from home |
| Beautification: Sense of Community & Sense of Place | Accessibility and accommodation; The regulars; A home away from home |
| Promoted social equality and stability | Neutral ground; The Third Place as leveller; A low profile |

Chapter 3 will proceed to consider the notion of Third Places from a social sustainability perspective but direct the focus towards planning approaches to guide the planning of Third Places. As no framework for the planning of Third Places exists, Chapter 3 will accordingly employ a qualitative enquiry into purposefully selected planning approaches to create a theory-based framework for the planning of Third Places, as point of departure.

CHAPTER 3: THE PLANNING OF THIRD PLACES FOR ENHANCED SOCIAL SUSTAINABILITY

3.1 Introduction

Research pertaining to Third Place planning is limited (Mehta & Basson, 2010:779), especially in terms of enhanced social sustainability within the urban fabric. Chapter 3 employed a qualitative inquiry into three purposefully selected planning approaches, namely the place-making approach, the lively planning approach and the green urbanism approach, as part of a theory-based sampling approach to create a framework for the planning of Third Places based on these existing planning approaches. The three approaches considered in this research were selected based on their responses to social problems in the urban context, emerging from the policies that the physical environment can positively influence well-being and quality of life (De Jong, 2014:84, 127-130; Karacor, 2014:253).

Theory-based sampling, applied in Chapter 3, involves selecting cases according to the extent to which they represent a particular theoretical construct. Purposive sampling (Palys, 2008:297) was applied as the population of the particular theoretical construct is difficult to determine, as in this case referring to limited theoretical guidance on the planning of Third Places.

The first planning approach considered, *place-making*, provides a platform for people to transform the locations they inhabit into the places they live in. Considered as both a philosophy and a practical process in terms of the transformation of public spaces, the place-making approach is centred on the observation of the people to establish their specific needs and requirements (Arefi, 1999:187; Cilliers & De Jong, 2013:1; Lepofsky & Fraser, 2003:133). The second planning approach considered, *lively planning*, contributes in transforming space to place, adding the lively element, and is characterised by functions of activity and use. To identify the liveability of a place, the lively planning approach focuses on the inclusive public realm, creating versatile lively places with various activities (Cilliers & de Jong, 2013:2; Lamit *et al.*, 2013:3-4). The third planning approach, *green urbanism*, considers public space planning and urban greening catalyst for enhancing social spaces for communities (Manley & Rose, 2014:2).

It was recognised that supplementary planning approaches might exist which could also contribute to the planning of Third Places. For the purpose of this research, the focus was placed on the three purposefully selected planning approaches (place-making, lively planning and green urbanism), to aid in developing a theory-based framework based on key

consideration and sampling of the three purposefully selected planning approaches. Figure 3-1 represents the structure of Chapter 3.

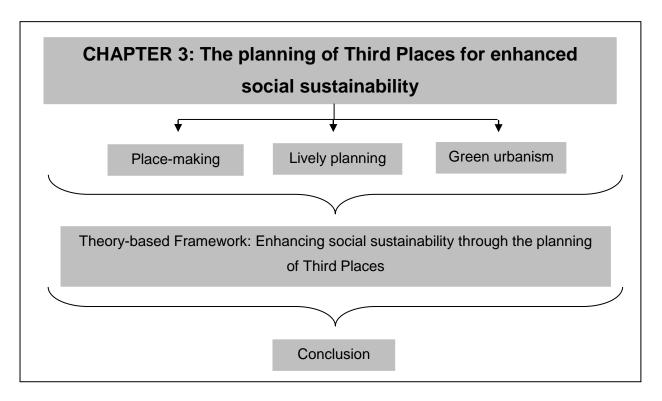


Figure 3-1: Chapter 3 structure

Accordingly, each purposefully selected planning approach was explored to sample theory to inform the theory-based framework for enhanced social sustainability through the planning of Third Places.

3.2 Planning approach: Place-making

Growing swiftly across a spectrum of multiple professions (Friedmann, 2010:152), the place-making approach aims to create places to set a platform to socialise and interact. However, cities today and the spaces within them agonise from "placelessness" (Saloojee, 2012:14) and could be improved by reclaiming public space for public use.

Place-making is regarded as a socially constructed process, shaping spaces by including different functions within (Cilliers *et al.*, 2012:6; Lanham, 2007:3). The approach is considered as a wide concept including various dimensions of development (PPS 2012:10). This is based on the premise that quality public places are lively, secure and distinctive, functioning well for the people who use them (PPS 2012:10). The place-making approach is therefore both an overarching idea and a hands-on tool for improving public spaces within a neighbourhood, city or region (Project for Public Spaces & Metropolitan Planning Council, 2008:1). This is when

place-making focuses on creating quality places, using cultural values associated with a setting and capturing the authentic characteristics of a place (Strydom, 2014:24). Known as a multi-stakeholder, multi-level and multi-sector approach, place-making necessitates a transdisciplinary perspective. Through implementing the place-making approach the structure of urban space may not change, but one's perceptions of it could. This is accomplished by giving urban space the perceived character it requires to become a place (Saloojee, 2012:14).

Place-making is a process and not an outcome. According to Ganis (2015:1) the relationship between the complex network of people and their places within urban areas should be considered to apply the place-making approach within these areas. According to the Project for Public Spaces and Metropolitan Planning Council (2008:1) place-making is how public spaces are shaped collectively to maximise shared value and provide for quality public places. It involves people and their locality, although the people–place relationship constantly changes regarding need and demand within urban areas (Cilliers & de Jong, 2013:1).

The empowering process of the place-making approach also inspires people to create and improve their public places, ultimately strengthening the connection between human and nature (Atiqul & Shah, 2011:601; Mpe & Ogra, 2014:593; Prange, 2014). This process consists of certain criteria to be followed to ensure a well-developed and designed place with a distinct form and function (Town and Country Planning Association, 2012:3). However, the inclusive process in which space is transformed into place through the place-making approach is considered as a tool for democracy enhancement within society (Arefi, 1999:187; Lepofsky & Fraser, 2003:133), motivating the establishment of collaborative partnerships. For this reason, the importance of place-making includes the formation of collaborative relationships to provide various stakeholder involvements (Strydom, 2014:27). To reclaim public space for public use, public non-profit organisations and private sectors are required to be involved in this process over a long period of time, and possibly indefinitely. Place-making could then also be portrayed as an approach to inspire existing communities to shape and create their public realm, maximising shared value (Lepofsky & Fraser, 2003:128; Mpe & Ogra, 2014:589).

A collaborative place-making process is essential in the quest for planning sustainable communities and includes three steps as exemplified in Figure 3-2 below.

UNDERSTANDING

Understanding the DNA of a place and what makes it special is fundamental to successfull implimentation of place-making.

ENGAGING

Engaging stakeholders and clients encourages understanding, creates shared ownership, and allows the construction of a collective vision.

CREATING

Creating begins with the visioning process and ends with physical interventions. But along the way there are many issues to resolve and many actions to coordinate.

Figure 3-2: Collaborative place-making process

Source: Author's own construction based on Jacobs (1993:10); Mpe and Ogra (2014:593); Norberg-Schulz (1976:5-6)

Place-making sets out to draw people to a public place and to spend time interacting with these places (Baltimore City Department of Planning, 2010:22; Mpe & Ogra, 2014:590; Project for Public Spaces & Metropolitan City Council, 2008:1). The interaction is encouraged through providing safe environments for the people within these places (Mpe & Ogra, 2014:593; PPS, 2012:10).

PPS (2015) extends on the place-making approach as both a practical process and a philosophy. This is due to the approach growing into an international movement, incorporated into planning policies and frameworks to serve the people of a community, providing vital places where function is put ahead of form (Project for Public Spaces & Metropolitan Planning Council, 2008:5). Public places are considered an extension of the community (Cilliers *et al.*, 2012:11) and when incorporating the views, needs and opinions of the community, improved neighbourhood liveability, regularity and resident engagement could be achieved. It is for this reason that the place-making approach facilitates the return of public space to the people (Siberberg *et al.*, 2013).

3.2.1 Place-making planning scales

Place-making approaches acknowledges the different planning scales and supports an integrated planning approach. The place-making approach can thus be implemented on various planning scales (Gehl, 2010:10) in order to maximise the opportunities provided in terms of the

planning of and provision for public places. Figure 3-3 illustrates the place-making planning scales.







Urban or city plan scale

Neighbourhood or site plan scale

Human or people plan scale

Figure 3-3: Place-making planning scales

Source: Author's own construction based on Gehl (2010:10); Scottish Government (2011:2)

3.2.1.1 Urban or city plan scale of place-making

On an urban or city plan scale, place-making is employed beyond the immediate boundary of the urban area. This allows for a larger picture to emerge and connects a wider network relating to public places and social interaction. On this scale the development plans along with the various master plans should knit the urban area together, forming continuity through place-making and enhancing the broader social fabric of that urban area (Gehl, 2010:10; The Scottish Government, 2011:2).

3.2.1.2 Neighbourhood or site plan scale of place-making

The existing layout of the infrastructure on a neighbourhood or site plan scale determines specific desired lines. This scale maintains a sense of continuity with the neighbourhood and creates a sense of place, enhancing function for users. This avoids ill layout and implementation of the applicable planning approach, ensuring easy access to encourage residents, workers and tourist to make use of the public places within their neighbourhoods (Friedmann, 2010:162; The Scottish Government, 2011:2).

3.2.1.3 Human or people plan scale of place-making

The human or people plan scale aims to ensure that interaction between objects and people are accommodated. The human scale in any given community depends on what the community perceives as this scale, or the scale that is commonly accepted by the people (Friedmann, 2010:154). The human or people plan scale is therefore the way the city is accessible to the

people by foot or the way it is observed through a car window. The focus remains on pedestrians (The Scottish Government, 2011:2).

3.2.2 Planning and design considerations of place-making

PPS (2014) developed the Place Diagram, which reflects four key attributes of a successful place, namely *sociability*, uses and activities, access and linkages, and comfort and image. Each key attribute is represented by many intangible qualities and measurements. These key attributes should be developed in harmony with the intangibles for a public place to reach its maximum potential, contribute to sustainable development and provide for the needs of the community within urban areas (Sohrabi, 2017:2).

The first key attribute, *sociability*, is a challenging quality to be achieved within any public place. Once users feel a strong sense of place or attachment to their community and the place fostering social activities, sociability is obtained, and it becomes an unmistakable feature. The strong sense of place or attachment is encouraged through setting a social stage for interaction for the different users of a place. *Uses & activities*, the second key attribute, is based on the activities provided within the place. These activities encourage regularity, as they provide a reason to be within the place. The third key attribute, *access and linkages*, is enhanced by its connections to its surroundings, both visual and physical. The connections should provide for easy access to and through the place, with well-defined interesting edges and convenience to public transport. *Comfort and image*, the final key attribute, rests on the perceptions concerning safety, cleanliness and seating options (PPS, 2014).

Table 3-1 captured these four key attributes, intangible qualities and measurements as developed by PPS in 2003.

Table 3-1: Key attributes, intangibles and measurements developed by PPS

| KEY ATTRIBUTES | INTANGIBLES | MEASUREMENTS |
|---------------------|-------------|--------------------------|
| | Diverse | Number of women, |
| Sociability | Stewardship | children and elderly |
| | Cooperative | Social networks |
| | Neighbourly | Volunteerism |
| | Pride | Evening use |
| | Friendly | Street life |
| | Interactive | |
| | Welcoming | |
| | • Fun | Local business ownership |
| Uses and activity | Active | Land-use patterns |
| | Vital | Property values |
| | Special | Rent levels |
| | Real | Retail sales |
| | Useful | |
| | Indigenous | |
| | Celebratory | |
| | Sustainable | |
| | Safe | Crime statistics |
| Comfort and image | Clean | Sanitation rating |
| | Green | Building conditions |
| | Walkable | Environmental data |
| | Seating | |
| | Spiritual | |
| | Charming | |
| | Attractive | |
| | Historic | |
| | Continuity | Traffic data |
| Access and linkages | Proximity | Mode splits |
| | Connected | Transit usage |
| | Readable | Pedestrian activity |
| | Walkable | Parking usage patterns |
| | Convenient | |
| | Accessible | |

Source: PPS (2003)

The place-making approach is mainly focused on the artistic elements in terms of designing cities for people. This includes paying attention to the social and cultural importance of quality and inviting public places (PPS, 2015) and aims to provide a variety of activities and objects within a single location (Project for Public spaces & Metropolitan Planning Council, 2008:10). The Power of 10+ is a concept adopted by PPS (2015) to commence the approach and ensure accomplishment in terms of the development thereof at multiple city scales. Attention is shifted towards the human experience within public places, where the principle of the Power of 10+ strives to provide users within places with a variety (10+) of reasons to be there or (10+) things to do. This could include, amongst others, seating areas, elements to observe, objects to touch, natural areas to explore and human interaction (PPS, 2015).

Although place-making is a long-term process of building community ownership in a place, short-term, inexpensive and creative transformations can be effective. PPS (2015) consequently identified various transforming principles to be incorporated in the strategic approach towards transforming space to place and introducing quality public places as captured in Table 3-2.

Table 3-2: Place-making principle strategies and considerations

| PRINCIPLE STRATEGY | CONSIDERATION | |
|---------------------------------|---|--|
| Look for partners, it cannot be | Ongoing sustainable support | |
| done alone | | |
| The community is the expert | Bottom-up approach | |
| (public participation) | Diverse perspectives and insights | |
| | Sense of community | |
| Forming supports function | Public and private investors for public inputs | |
| Vision creation | Maximised potential of space | |
| | Community sense of pride and inviting atmosphere | |
| | encouraging safety | |
| The power of observation | Natural surrounding integration of public space and | |
| | people | |
| | Public need satisfaction | |
| Follow a sustainability | Development values | |
| approach | Social, economic and environmental sustainability | |
| Triangulate | People linkage | |
| | Element arrangement in public space | |

| Linking with a same | Object towns law and a surface of | | |
|--------------------------------|---|--|--|
| Lighter, quicker, cheaper | Short-term improvements and goals | | |
| (LQC strategy) | Local development strategy | | |
| | Community-created temporary projects | | |
| | Creative energy of public participation | | |
| | Lightweight strategies | | |
| Public streets should become | Car-free zones | | |
| public places | Pedestrian-friendly streets | | |
| | Interpersonal interaction | | |
| | Sense of community | | |
| Squares and parks to become | Serve as a "safety valve" | | |
| multi-use destinations | Multi-use destination provided | | |
| | Common ground with variety activities and attractions | | |
| | Social connection formulation | | |
| Create a place, not only a | Physical elements for vital public places | | |
| design | Comfortable and inviting elements | | |
| Reinvent community planning | Holistic approach within communities | | |
| towards place-making | Partnerships | | |
| | Community control | | |
| Link a public health agenda to | Health benefits for the people and the environment | | |
| a public space agenda | | | |
| Create a comprehensive public | Comprehensive top-down and bottom-up approach | | |
| space agenda | | | |
| Restructure government to | Government funding | | |
| support place-making | Adjustment on policy and framework support towards | | |
| | public spaces | | |
| Money is not the issue | Correlation between cost and benefits provided | | |
| A continual process | Continual attention | | |
| | Response to the needs, opinions and changes of the | | |
| | community | | |
| | | | |

Source: PPS (2015); Project for Public Spaces and Metropolitan City Council (2008:7-8); Schlebusch (2015:63)

A qualitative enquiry into the design considerations of place-making resulted in a theory-based sampling of specific design considerations that could be translated to the planning of Third Places. Table 3-3 captures these specific design considerations regarding the place-making approach and the motivation for their inclusion in informing the framework for the planning of Third Places.

The design considerations relate to the four key attributes proposed by PPS and are included due to the direct correlation that can be made between the planning of public places and Third Places regarding these four key attributes (Sohrabi, 2017:2).

 Table 3-3:
 Place-making design considerations and elements

| DESIGN | OBJECTIVE | DESIGN ELEMENTS | THIRD PLACE LINKAGE |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------|---|---|
| CONSIDERATION | | | |
| Sociability | Social dimension for urban vitality | Place attraction through synergy | Successful Third Places provide opportunities for social interaction. Sociability |
| | fostering social activities. | Strong sense of place fostering social activities | aids in the creation of a platform for community cohesion and social inclusion. |
| | | Welcoming space with diverse uses and users | |
| | | Social dimension and urban vitality | |
| Uses and activities | Active space enhancing characteristic | Characteristic uniqueness | Purposefully designed activities to be included within the Third Place ensure |
| | uniqueness for regularity. | Active space – place | user regularity and encourage active social interaction. |
| | | Connected function | |
| | | Transitions | |
| | | User need diversity | |
| Access and linkages | Internal and external place | Entrance and exit to and from the public space | Effectively designed access to and from the Third Place enhance the number of |
| | connectedness. | Safety perception | visitors that frequently visit the Third Place due to convenience-encouraged |
| | | Internal and external connectedness of the place | regularity. Third Places should be accessible to all. |
| | | Walkable spaces | |
| | | Network linkages and other function proximity | |
| Comfort and image | Overall character (sense of place) | Overall character of the public space | Social interaction is encouraged through comfort. The display of social niceties |
| | including perceptions about safety, | Public furniture and facilities availability | enhances a welcoming feeling, fostering a sense of place. |
| | cleanliness, and seating options. | Safety perceptions | |
| | | Aesthetic values and attractiveness | |
| | | Pedestrian scale | |
| | | Active facades | |
| | | Shared spaces | |

Source: Authors own construction based on Baltimore City Department of Planning, (2010:22-23); PPS (2014); Project for Public Spaces and Metropolitan Planning Council (2008:10)

3.3 Planning approach: Lively planning

Lively places are strategic to the quality of life within cities (Gomes & Moretto, 2011:48; Schilling, 2010:1), the coming together of various planning approaches and assets to form a network impacting the people, their neighbourhoods as well as the urban environment as a whole (Gauteng City-Region Observatory, 2013:1). Lively planning is accordingly achieved through the restoration of space becoming a lively place (Soholt, 2004:28), based on the needs of the public and enhancing the usage of the transformed place (Cilliers *et al.*, 2014:1371).

The lively planning approach focusses on the inclusive public realm by encouraging alternative uses of the place to improve possibilities within the created place. According to Loudier and Dubois (2001:1), a lively place can be categorised as a meeting place, a place for debate, controversy, discussion, a place that is accessible to all and that one and all can use. Thus, defining liveability within public places should be done according to context and is considered as a people-led approach. For the purpose of this research it can be accepted that liveability is best defined and acknowledged as the sense of one's experience within a place. A place is thus categorised as lively when diverse textures, objects and colour are incorporated within a place, where the focus is placed on the public grounds, being inclusive for all and open for a wide range of user groups (Hobart City Council, 2011:1).

Lively places are not only provided for people to walk in or pass through, these places provide a public area within urban areas for people to sit, stand, linger and spend their leisure time in (Lamit *et al.*, 2013:4). Thus, lively places should be planned with the intension of "intensive" use, where the existence of people engaging in a variety of sustained and social activities contributes to defining a space as a lively place. Different levels of activities and interactions observed through the behaviour of people within these lively places (Carmona, 2003; Lamit *et al.*, 2013:3) are involved in defining a lively place. Lively places are then based on social contact, social awareness and social cohesion, as people are constantly triggered to participate in these places as public life exists within urban areas (Carr *et al.*, 1992; Soholt, 2004:8).

The provision of Third Places through applying the lively planning approach ought to encourage alternative uses within the place. This is driven by public participation methods and approaches. The challenge concerning the lively planning approach is to create lively places for people whose needs are constantly changing (Cilliers *et al.*, 2012:13) and for a society who is becoming more and more dynamic, taking into consideration the needs of the urban environment in terms of green planning as well as the needs of the people in terms of function, form and activities.

Lively planning therefore transforms locations that people inhabit into the places they live in (Cilliers & De Jong, 2013:1; Veenhoven & Ehrhardt, 1995:35), resulting in higher levels of public satisfaction. Lively planning recognises the need for an integrated approach to address complex problems in terms of urban realities (Cilliers *et al.*, 2014:1368). Lively planning could thus contribute to the well-being and cultural richness of cities and communities (Parker, 2014), enhancing economic, social and environmental value. As people have widespread needs, lively planning could be the collective arrangement to fulfil these needs and enhance social sustainability.

Lively planning is also focused on creating versatile, diverse and integrative functions, elements and linkages within urban public places. This approach attracts people and activities and adhere to the key attributes, strategies and creation components of place-making. With that said, the aim of the lively planning approach is to enhance the usage of public places within urban areas, creating and designing versatile places that celebrate the uniqueness of a place (Cilliers & De Jong, 2013:2).

3.3.1 Planning and design considerations of Lively planning

Lively planning focusses on the inclusion of lively elements within a space to enhance the regularity. The identified considerations and elements in providing lively places should be linked to a marketing dimension, functional dimension, environmental dimension, social dimension, visual dimension, movement dimension, compatibility dimension and psychological dimension (Baltimore City Department of Planning, 2010:5-23; Cilliers *et al.*, 2015:11; City of Lonetree Colorado, 2013:11), as captured in Table 3-4 below. Each dimension focusses on enhancing lively elements, functions and linkages to encourage regularity through providing for user requirements due to the sense of place and belonging created through each dimension considered.

Regarding the design considerations guiding lively planning, a direct correlation can be made to the place-making approach and its principle strategies. A qualitative enquiry into the design considerations of lively planning approaches resulted in a theory-based sampling of specific design considerations that could be translated to the planning of Third Places. Table 3-4 captures these specific design considerations and the motivation for including such to inform the framework for the planning of Third Places.

Table 3-4: Lively planning design considerations

| DESIGN | OBJECTIVE | DESIGN ELEMENTS | THIRD PLACE LINKAGE |
|----------------------|----------------------------------|--|--|
| CONSIDERATION | | | |
| Marketing dimension | Market research establishing | Quality of space enhancing a unique selling point | Establishing of user need requirement for an attractive and inviting Third Place encouraging |
| | community's need for regularity | | lingering of users and increased regularity. |
| Functional dimension | Purpose practicality and | Experimental approach | Functionality of the Third Place will encourage user regularity, satisfy user needs and create a |
| | usefulness | Consistency for quality | sense of belonging. |
| | | Flexibility for users | |
| Environmental | Design relating to the natural | Sustainable practice approach | Encouraging a balance between human and nature through enhancing and restoring ecological, |
| dimension | environment | Green initiatives | biodiversity and ecosystem conservation and substitute grey infrastructure in urban areas. This will |
| | | | ensure human health (physical, emotional and mental). |
| Social dimension | Social stage for interaction | Options creating opportunity for interaction | Social dimension will encourage a Third Place on neutral ground where individuals and |
| | opportunities | Social cohesion | communities wish to gather and interact, outside of the work or home realm. This is where users |
| | | | choose to spend time. |
| Visual dimension | Appeal regarding seeing or sight | Colour and texture - surface variety | Visually the Third Place should be inviting and represent a sense of place for a personal |
| | | Innovation in design through creativity - public art | experience. |
| | | Scale diversity | |
| Movement | Pedestrian-friendly movement | Utilise shared space through mixed use | Movement should focus on pedestrian flow within the Third Place, lending a comfortable public |
| dimension | flow | Enclosure elements through the layout | balance for active informal social interaction. |
| | | Pedestrian friendly | |
| | | Reinforce linkages | |
| | | Streetscape enhancement | |
| Compatibility | Compact layout design in context | Context consideration, design in context | The physical design should encourage a compact design for social interaction and encouragement |
| dimension | | | opportunities. |
| Psychological | Mental and emotional sense of | Sense of authenticity | Within the Third Place the person-process-place concept should be enhanced to encourage a place |
| dimension | well-being | Sense of place | attachment for each user to have a personal experience within the Third Place. |
| | | Well-being | |
| | | Troil boiling | |

Source: Author's own construction based on Baltimore City Department of Planning (2010:5-23); Cilliers et al. (2015:11); City of Lonetree Colorado (2013:11)

3.4 Planning approach: Green urbanism

Considered as a relatively new planning approach, green urbanism offers innovative approaches to integrate urban spaces that provide sustainable "green" systems (Manley & Rose, 2014:2). Green urbanism is put forward as interdisciplinary, requiring a collaborative approach in terms of design and implementation. The approach involves a wide range of specialists, including planners, biologists, engineers, architects, sociologists, economists and environmentalists (Manley & Rose, 2014:3). Nassar (2013:340) refers to green urbanism as a conceptual model for zero-emission and zero-waste urban design, consisting of practical methods to incorporate a smart and embracing design, incorporating nature within public spaces. Wells (2010) further defines green urbanism as "the practice of creating communities mutually beneficial to humans and the environment". This definition implies that green urbanism improves the development of social and environmental sustainability. However, green urbanism has taken on many shapes and directions, the approach seems as elusive as it is evocative. A key element of the elevation of green urbanism, becoming common urbanism, in the built environment is the interest and relevant knowledge of green spaces and places.

Through applying the green urbanism approach, urban nature is incorporated within urban areas. This leads to biophilic cities (Beatley & Newman, 2013:3328), referring to cities containing abundant nature. Biophilic urban areas strive to foster deep connections and daily contact with natural surroundings. As green urbanism does not only consist of large open green spaces (parks), nature in cities can be either big or small, and varied in quality. It remains an open question as to the mix of different kinds of nature that urbanites need, ideally a diversity of integrated nature opportunities. Literature has confirmed that people are happiest, emotionally and physically healthiest, and most productive when working and living in close proximity to nature (Wolch *et al.*, 2014:235; Zupancic *et al.*, 2015:12). For this reason, nature within urban areas is not optional, but essential to living a heathy and meaningful life.

The integration of green urbanism within urban areas play an essential role in social, economic and environmental aspects of sustainable development. This approach also aims to safeguard the natural environment for future generations through protecting and enhancing the natural environment (Atiqul & Shah, 2011:601; Town and Country Planning Association, 2012:3), and adding to the aesthetic value of providing a green city.

The main focus in this research concerning the green urbanism approach is placed on building natural social capital, where nature is incorporated in unexpected paces within urban areas. This could provide a direct link between human and nature. The strategic planning of green urbanism within urban areas require different design considerations and elements,

strengthening the green identity and green value within urban areas and more specifically Third Places.

3.4.1 Planning and design considerations of green urbanism

To face the challenging issues of sustainability within urban areas today, innovative development and employment of green urbanism principles is required (Ranjha, 2016:1). Although the characteristics of green urbanism planning are multi-functional (Gauteng City-Region Observatory, 2013:11-13), urban nature should be planned, implemented, enhanced, maintained and protected to achieve maximum potential within urban areas.

A qualitative enquiry into the design considerations of green urbanism resulted in a theory-based sampling of specific design considerations that could be translated to the planning of Third Places. Table 3-5 captures these specific design considerations and the motivation for including such to inform the framework for the planning of Third Places. Specific design considerations include diversity of greenery to be incorporated, the notion of sustainability, multi-functionality for different user group satisfaction; multi-scale incorporation of green urbanism, and finally an adaptive planning and design approach to encourage a smart and embracing design (Ahern, 2007:269; Ahern, 2011:341-343; Cilliers & Cilliers, 2016:20; Nassar, 2013:339-340).

 Table 3-5:
 Green urbanism design considerations and elements

| DESIGN | OBJECTIVE | DESIGN ELEMENTS | THIRD PLACE LINKAGE |
|-------------------|---------------------------|--|--|
| CONSIDERATION | | | |
| Diversity | Diversity of greenery | Social and functional diversity | Big or small natural areas varied in quality should be |
| | within the Third Place | Plan within ecological limits of urban | incorporated to encourage user diversity within the |
| | | areas for biodiversity enhancement | Third Place and opportunity to interact with nature on |
| | | | different scales. |
| Sustainability | Sustainable design for | Water efficiency | Green urbanism within Third Places enhances overall |
| | current and future use | Materials and resources | sustainable development when a design is |
| | | Social aspect | implemented for current and future use. |
| | | Environmental quality | |
| | | Community priority | |
| Multi-functional | Green usage functionality | Combined services and activities | Third Places within integrated green urbanism being |
| | (day and night) | | multi-function for diverse user groups could fulfil a |
| | | | personal need for the user, being available as the |
| | | | need arises. |
| Multi-scale | Human and urban scale | Connectivity planning | Green urbanism integration on different levels |
| | (interconnected systems) | Human and urban scale | enhance human and nature interaction. |
| | | interconnected systems | |
| Adaptive planning | Flexibility planning for | Plan for flexibility | The green elements within Third Places should |
| and design | greenery adaptation | Experimental design | encourage a smart and embracing design to |
| | | | incorporate nature. |

Source: Author's own construction based on Ahern (2007:269); Ahern (2011:341-343); Cilliers and Cilliers (2016); Nassar (2013:339-340)

3.5 Theory-based framework to inform the planning of Third Places

A collective consideration of the three purposefully selected planning approaches informed a theory-based framework to enhance social sustainability through the planning of Third Places, as illustrated in Figure 3-4.

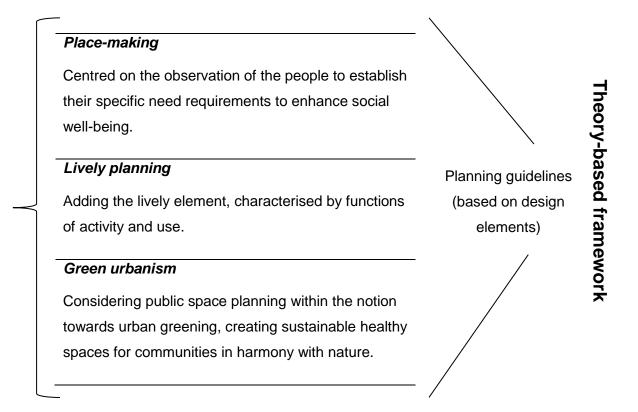


Figure 3-4: Three purposefully selected planning approaches informing the theory-based framework

A collective consideration of the three purposefully selected planning approaches are illustrated in Table 3-6. The three planning approaches informs the planning of Third Places through the design considerations for enhanced social sustainability.

Table 3-6: Collective consideration of the three purposefully selected planning approaches

| Collective consideration of the three purposefully selected planning approaches | | | | | | | | | |
|--|--|---|--------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------|--|--|--|--|
| | | Third Place planning considerations to enhance | | Overlapping design considerations | | | | | |
| Planning approach design considerations | Planning guidelines | social sustainability | Place-making | Lively planning | Green urbanism | | | | |
| | Planning approach: Place-making | | | | | | | | |
| Sociability Social dimension for urban vitality fostering social activities | place attraction through synergysense of placewelcoming space with diverse uses and users | Creation of a platform for community cohesion and social inclusion | | X | Х | | | | |
| Uses and activities Active space enhancing characteristic uniqueness for regularity | - connected function - transitions - user need diversity | Organising and offering activities to foster active social interaction | | | Х | | | | |
| Access and linkages Internal and external place connectedness | entrance and exit to and from the public space safety perception walkability network linkages and other function proximity | Enhance the number of visitors that frequently visit the Third Place, due to convenience encouraging regularity | | Х | Х | | | | |
| Comfort and image Overall character (sense of place) including perceptions about safety, cleanliness, and seating options | public furniture and facilities availability safety perceptions aesthetic values and attractiveness pedestrian scale active facades shared spaces | Display of social niceties | | X | | | | | |
| The power of 10+ Provision of a variety (10+) activities and objects within a single location | - seating, playgrounds to enjoy, art to touch, music to hear, food to eat, history to experience, people to meet, natural areas to explore, books to read, water features | Focus on the human experience within the Third Place | | Х | | | | | |

| | Planning approach | h: Lively planning | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Marketing dimension Market research establishing community need for regularity | - quality of space enhancing a unique selling point | Diverse user-need attraction inviting lingering and regularity | | |
| Functional dimension Purpose practicality and usefulness | experimental approachconsistency for qualityflexibility for users | Contributes to public places where regular, voluntary gatherings of individuals occur | Х | Х |
| Environmental dimension Design relating to the natural environment | sustainable practice approachgreen initiatives | Create, enhance and restore ecological, biodiversity and ecosystem conservation and substitute grey infrastructure in urban areas | | X |
| Social dimension Social stage for interaction opportunities | - options creating opportunity for interaction - social cohesion | Public place on neutral ground where individuals and communities wish to gather and interact, outside of the work or home realm | Х | |
| Visual dimension Appeal regarding seeing or sight | colour and texture surface variety innovation in design through creativity public art scale diversity | Representation of a personal experience | X | |
| Movement dimension Pedestrian friendly movement flow | utilise shared space through mixed-use enclosure elements through the layout reinforce linkages & enhance streetscape | Lending a comfortable public balance for active informal social interaction | Х | |
| Compatibility dimension Compact layout design in context | - context consideration, design in context | Physical design encouraging compact design for social interaction encouragement | | Х |
| Psychological dimension Mental and emotional sense of well-being | - sense of authenticity - sense of place | Person-process-place concept enhancing place attachment | | |

| | Planning approach: Green urbanism | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|--|
| Diversity Diversity of greenery within the Third Place | - social and functional diversity - plan within ecological limits for biodiversity enhancement | Big or small natural areas varied in quality | Х | | | | |
| Sustainability Sustainable design for current and future use | - water efficiency - materials and resources - social aspect - environmental quality - community priority | Creation and maintenance of the conditions under which humans and nature can exist in productive harmony within urban areas | Х | | | | |
| Multi-functional Green usage functionality (day and night) | - Combined services and activities | Fulfil a need for the people, being available when needed | Х | х | | | |
| Multi-scale Human and urban scale (interconnected systems) | - scale connectivity planning | Planning on different scales enforcing an integrated planning approach and maximising the opportunities provided | Х | | | | |
| Adaptive planning and design Flexibility planning for greenery adaptation | - experimental design | Incorporating a smart and embracing design, where space embraces nature | | Х | | | |

Overlapping design considerations of the various planning approaches were identified in the collective consideration (cross-reference to Table 3-6). The overlapping was informed by the overlying of the three purposefully selected planning approach design considerations and their specific planning guidelines. The overlapping design considerations were recoded to inform a theory-based framework for the planning of Third Places.

The recoded design considerations for the theory-based framework based on the integrative consideration of the three purposefully selected planning approaches (cross-reference to Table 3-6) are captured in Table 3-7.

Table 3-7: Recoded design considerations for the theory-based framework

| PLACE-MAKING DESIGN CONSIDERATION | LIVELY PLANNING DESIGN CONSIDERATIONS | GREEN URBANISM DESIGN CONSIDERATIONS | RECODED DESIGN CONSIDERATIONS TO INFORM THE PLANNING OF THIRD PLACES |
|---|---|--------------------------------------|--|
| Sociability ¹ | Marketing dimension⁵ | Diversity ² | ¹ Social inclusivity |
| Uses and activities ² | Functional dimension⁴ | Sustainability ¹ | ² Multi-functionality |
| Access and linkages³ | Environmental dimension ⁶ | Multi-functional ² | ³ Accessibility |
| Comfort and image⁴ | • Social dimension ¹ | Multi-scale ³ | ⁴ Perceptibility |
| • The power of 10+2 | • Visual dimension ⁴ | Adaptive planning and | ⁵ Marketability |
| | • Movement dimension ³ | design ⁷ | ⁶ Environmental sensitivity |
| | Compatibility dimension⁷ | | ⁷ Adaptability |
| | Psychological dimension ⁸ | | 8Intrinsic connectivity |

Accordingly, a theory-based framework was compiled based on the collective consideration of the three purposefully selected planning approaches and the specific recoded design considerations (cross-reference to Table 3-6 and Table 3-7).

Table 3-8 illustrates the theory-based framework informed by the eight recoded design considerations that were identified for enhanced social sustainability though the planning of Third Places.

Table 3-8: Theory-based framework

| Planning approach design considerations Interpretation in terms of | of Third Place objectives | Planning guidelines | Third Place planning considerations |
|---|----------------------------------|--|--|
| design considerations | or rimar lace objectives | | a post practical and a constant and a |
| | | r idining guidelines | to enhance social sustainability |
| | | | |
| | | - place attraction through synergy | Creation of a platform for community cohesion and social inclusion |
| Creation of a platform for com | nmunity cohesion and social | - sense of place | Public place on neutral ground where individuals and communities wish to gather |
| Social inclusivity inclusion by improving the abi | ility and opportunity on which | - welcoming space with diverse uses and | and interact outside of the work or home realm |
| individuals and groups take p | art in society. The fostering of | users | Creation and maintenance of the conditions under which humans and nature can |
| social activities on neutral gro | ound. | - sustainable approach | exist in productive harmony within urban areas |
| | | - community priority | (cross-reference to Section 2.2, Section 2.5 and Section 2.7) |
| Active space enhancing chara | acteristic uniqueness, through | - user-need diversity | Organising and offering activities to foster active social interaction |
| providing a variety (10+) of ac | ctivities and amenities to focus | - social and functional diversity | Focus on the human experience within the Third Place |
| Multi-functionality on the enhancement of the hu | uman experience for each | - combined services and activities (10+) | Big or small natural areas varied in quality |
| individual within the Third Place | ce. | | (cross-reference to Section 2.7.1, Section 3.2.2 and Section 3.4) |
| | | - entrance and exit to and from space | Enhance the number of visitors that frequently visit the Third Place, due to |
| Internal and external place of | onnoctednose encouraging | - safety perception | convenience encouraging regularity |
| Accessibility Internal and external place co convenient pedestrian movem | | - walkability | Planning on different scales enforcing an integrated planning approach and |
| Convenient pedestrian moven | nent now. | - utilise shared space through mixed-use | maximising the opportunities provided |
| | | - reinforce linkages | (cross-reference to Section 2.7.1 and Section 3.2.1) |
| The display of social niceties | to enhance the overall | - public furniture and facilities availability | Display of social niceties and contributes to public places where regular, voluntary |
| Perceptibility character (sense of place) three | | - aesthetic values and attractiveness | gatherings of individuals occur |
| designs. | ough smart and adaptation | - flexibility for users | Representation of a personal experience |
| uesigns. | | - scale diversity | (cross-reference to Section 2.7 and Section 2.7.1) |
| The attractiveness, practicality | y and usefulness for voluntary | - quality of space enhancing a unique | Diverse user-need attraction inviting lingering and regularity |
| Marketability gatherings to occur through the | ne establishment of user need | selling point | (cross-reference to Section 2.7.1) |
| attraction for regularity. | | | |
| Environmental Enhancement of a sustainable | e green design for current and | - sustainable practice approach | Create, enhance and restore ecological, biodiversity and ecosystem conservation |
| sensitivity future use, relating to natural | | - green initiatives | and substitute grey infrastructure in urban areas |
| ratare ass, relating to material | ommonial arrolony. | | (cross-reference to Section 2.7.2, Table 2.4) |
| Compact layout design in con | ntext through incorporating | - context consideration, design in context | Physical design encouraging compact design for social interaction |
| | stems for the Third Place to be | - experimental design | encouragement |
| modified. | | - day- and night usage | Incorporating a smart and embracing design, where space embraces nature |
| ····oaiiioai | | | (cross-reference to Section 2.7 and Section 3.4) |
| Intrinsic connectivity Mental and emotional sense of | of well-being based on person- | - sense of authenticity | Person-process-place concept enhancing place attachment |
| process-place attachment. | | - sense of place | (cross-reference to Section 2.6) |

The theory-based framework portrayed in Table 3-8 were further applied as part of the empirical investigation, in an attempt to refine the framework for enhanced social sustainability through the planning of Third Places, based on international and local best practices, and translated to conform to the local South African planning context.

3.6 Conclusion

Chapter 3 reflected on three purposefully selected planning approaches to inform a theory-based framework to enhance social sustainability through the planning of Third Places, in line with the research aim and objectives determined in Chapter 1.

Acknowledging that other supplementary planning approaches could also inform the planning of Third Places, this research was limited to the social dimension of sustainability, and the three approaches considered in this research were selected based on their responses to social problems in the urban context, emerging from the policies that the physical environment can positively influence well-being and quality of life (De Jong, 2014: 84, 127-130; Karacor, 2014:253).

The qualitative enquiry into these three planning approaches resulted in a theory-based framework to guide the planning of Third Places, with eight recoded design considerations namely social inclusivity, multi-functionality, accessibility, perceptibility, marketability, environmental sensitivity, adaptability and intrinsic connectivity.

In the context of this research, social inclusivity aims to improve the ability and opportunity on which individuals and groups take part in society (The World Bank, 2018), and is proposed through the fostering of social activities on neutral ground within the Third Place provided. Multifunctionality within the Third Place contributes to fulfilling several functions or consisting of different uses (Cambridge Dictionary, 2018). In the context of this research referring to the usage functionality of the place and the human experience, enhancing characteristic uniqueness. For convenient pedestrian movement flow, internal and external place connectedness is considered and encouraged through accessibility. The design consideration, perceptibility is also considered to, referring to the sense of place. Perceptibility thus referrers to the Third Place being perceived by the senses or the mind. Regularity is in addition required and can be enhanced through the establishment of user need attraction. In this context, marketability referrers to the promoting of attractiveness and practicality of the provided Third Place. The enhancement of sustainable approaches and a green design is proposed through and environmental sensitivity design consideration for the planning of the Third Place. Contributing to the design consideration of accessibility, adaptability is in addition proposed.

Adaptability, in this context, referrers to the layout and interconnected systems for possible modifications, should it be required within the Third Place. Finally, for the Third Place to enhance a sense of well-being, with reference to the person-process-place attachment (cross-reference to Section 2.6) intrinsic connectivity is proposed.

The theory-based framework compiled in Chapter 3 (Table 3-8) was accordingly considered against the South African reality (Chapter 4) and refined in the empirical investigation through a) an informative case study review and b) local expert analysis.

CHAPTER 4: REFLECTING ON THE SOUTH AFRICAN PLANNING REALITY FROM A SOCIAL SUSTAINABILITY PERSPECTIVE

4.1 Introduction

Chapter 4 of this research elaborates on the current planning reality within South Africa relating to broader sustainability approaches. The realities and challenges faced within South Africa were elaborated on in this chapter through capturing the status quo, and the policy and legislative frameworks applicable to sustainable development and public space planning in South Africa. Chapter 4 also included an evaluation matrix of the applicable South African policy and legislative frameworks, in an attempt to identify opportunities for translating the planning of Third Places to local context. Figure 4-1 illustrates the chapter structure.

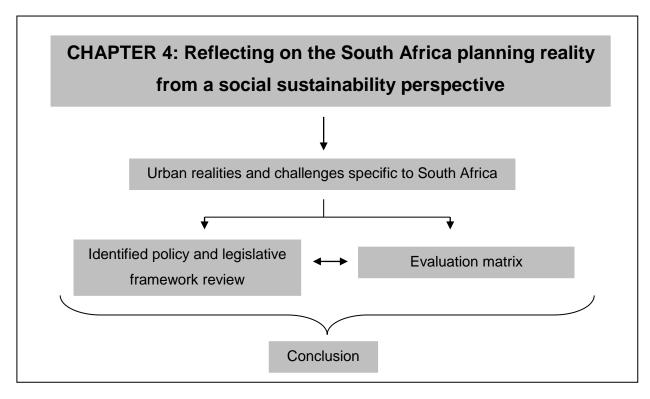


Figure 4-1: Chapter 4 structure

4.2 Local urban realities and challenges

The concept of Third Places is conceived in different ways worldwide. Within South Africa, reference is mostly made to the term "public places". The term "Third Place" (which includes green spaces and public places or spaces) remains fairly new. Within planning policy and legislative frameworks, occasional reference is made to the inclusion or development of public places or spaces when raising the subject of community upliftment, improving quality of life, building sustainable communities, community facilities or public infrastructure (Constitution of

the Republic of South Africa, 1996; Municipal Systems Act, 2000; National Development Plan, 2030; National Environmental Management Act, 1998; National Strategy for Sustainable Development and Action Plan 2011-2014; National Urban Development Framework; 2009; Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act, 2013). It is for this reason that reference will be made to public places concerning the planning of Third Places within Chapter 4.

A challenge that South African cities are facing include fragmentation, mostly caused by apartheid policies that were implemented from 1948 to 1990 (Badenhorst et al., 2005:4; Jürgens et al., 2003:35; Kay, 2007:1; Pieterse, 2006:286; Pieterse, 2007:1; Ross, 1999:114; Smith, 2003:2), as well as frail urban layout development, causing floating buildings which are fragmented from one another. Fragmentation is an ongoing concern and can be defined as when "development occurs in relatively discrete pockets or cells" (Pieterse, 2007:5). It is then when the city no longer functions as a synergetic system (Bénit-Gbaffou, 2008:1934), largely impacting sustainable urban development. This poses great challenges for the discipline of town planning within the urban areas of South African cities (Parker, 2014). According to Southworth (2007:1), fragmentation causes the city to become unsustainable, mainly because it is not integrated, where unused urban spaces occur throughout the urban fabric. These unused spaces create opportunity for redesign by introducing the notion of Third Place planning or public place planning. Numerous authors stress the importance of integrated cities to ultimately address the increasing levels of fragmentation (Barnett, 1995:1; Häussermann, 2006:9; Hidding & Teunissen, 2002:299; Marcinczak & Sagan, 2011:1789; Wei & Zhang, 2012; Yaping & Zongyi, 2011:417).

However, South Africa is rapidly changing from a segregated to an integrated society and rapid urbanisation has encouraged unified living conditions. In South Africa, as in numerous countries, obtaining democracy differs from developing a civil society, involving exposing residents to different development initiatives and incentives, developing the potential of people and their capacity to developing, maintaining and sustaining socio political, socio-economic, socio-cultural and socio-educational progress (Louw & Bredenkamp, 1999). South Africa is also facing decentralisation and suburbanisation, which contributes to the negative effects in terms of city form and structure (Bromley *et al.*, 2005:2407). Decentralisation and suburbanisation refer to when functions that are unique to the city centre begin to follow their users to the outer areas or periphery of the city and into neighbourhoods. This creates urban sprawl and results in abandoned city centres. The occurring change in the metropolitan structure leads to urban decay (De Villiers, 1997:31), resulting in a decrease in economic value and an increase of unused urban spaces within city centres.

Due to the focus of this research being placed on social sustainability within urban areas, challenges specific to social sustainability within South Africa cannot go unnoticed and should be emphasised. Past challenges in terms of social sustainability within South Africa remain and some have even intensified (Goebel, 2007:292; Ross *et al.*, 2010:292), mainly due to apartheid histories having numerous impacts such as general inequality (urban and rural, formal and informal) (Wilson, 2011:3; Pecenka & Kundhlande, 2013:737; Stellenberg, 2015:2) and gender inequality (Mathews *et al.*, 2012:84; Jonck *et al.*, 2015:141).

However, the challenges faced in terms of social sustainability go far beyond inequality, where sustainability in terms of the broader social context are fuelled by high poverty, low levels of education and high unemployment levels (Ataguba & Alaba, 2012:758; Dawson, 2014:864; Kotze & Prevost, 2015:143), violent crime due to extensive poverty (Pecenka & Kundhlande, 2013:737; Klaaren, 2015:552), substance abuse (Peltzer *et al.*, 2010:2237; Schneider *et al.*, 2014:1; Sorsdahl *et al.*, 2014:122) and HIV/Aids (Schatz *et al.*, 2011:599; Schneider *et al.*, 2014:1; Mavhandu-Mudzusi & Sandy, 2015:196; Meade *et al.*, 2015:80). The main challenge in terms of inequality, is identified within South Africa when observing the vast difference between urban and rural areas, formal and informal settings, the divide between low-income and high-income levels, living standard measurement percentages and basic service provision (Freund, 2010:287; Goebel, 2007:294; Hopkins, 2007:5; Jürgens *et al.*, 2013:256; Lorraine & Molapo, 2014:905; Poulsen & Silverman, 2005:29; Tomlinson, 2006:87).

In many cases the planning of public places within South Africa are regarded as unaffordable to provide and maintain for, where it cannot compete for popular or political support in the face of demands for basic services (Prange, 2014; Southworth, 2007:4). This is due to South Africa's continuing growing population and the results of urbanisation. Facing the reality of extreme increases in urbanisation, referring to the growing number of people in urban areas (Pacione, 2005:127), great pressure on urban spaces and public places are experienced (Prange, 2014). This results in neglected and abandoned public places which offer minimal sense of place (Southworth, 2007:4).

Within South Africa the biggest stumbling block in the provision and development public places are the concerning financial aspect thereof. According to Parker (2014), there is an obvious need for public place planning within South African cities, but the financial provision is usually not prioritised within budgets. This is due to more pressing concerns from a governmental point of view, such as poverty and the provision of basic services. A major barrier to the implementation of innovations that promotes public place planning in South Africa is the lack of training for government and private developers on the need (and benefits that can be gained) regarding public places within urban areas of South African.

In an attempt to address city spatial patterns and inequality challenges within South Africa through constant planning policy and legislative frameworks, little has been achieved in improving current situations relating to constant pressure placed on urban spaces and public places (Watson, 2009:160; Tissington, 2011:6; Du Plessis, 2014:85; Turok & Borel-Saladin, 2014:688).

A need exists for quality of life and sustainability for the people within urban areas, mainly due to society becoming more and more concerned about the quality of urban life (Levent *et al.*, 2004:2) and social well-being. However, the design of a place, its uses and functions resonate differently with diverse groups and must therefore be addressed differently in their designs (Day, 2003:90). Unfortunately, the major benefits that Third Places in urban areas provide in terms of human and nature, are overlooked (Prange, 2014).

4.3 Local planning policy and legislative frameworks

Integrated development planning within South Africa is increasing in terms of application and success (Binns & Nel, 2002:931; Cilliers, 2010:51). As a result, there are now numerous planning policy and legislative frameworks suggesting sustainable development and the integration between spheres and sectors.

For purposes of this research, seven national policy and legislative frameworks were identified and reviewed. These identified policies and legislative frameworks serve as a point of departure to determine the scope to include Third Places as part of mainstream planning approaches in South Africa, to enhance broader social sustainability objectives. The identified policy and legislative frameworks were considered in terms of their reference to sustainability, social sustainability and opportunities to support the planning of Third Places.

It is further recognised that international policies and frameworks, such as Agenda 21, proposing objectives in terms of a global action plan for sustainable development into the 21st century, the New Urban Agenda (NUA), which is an action-oriented document that sets the global standards of achievement in sustainable urban development, and International Guidelines on Urban and Territorial Planning (IG-UTP) in terms of the UN-Habitat provide guidelines with a global reference framework that promotes more compact, socially inclusive, better integrated and connected cities and territories that foster sustainable urban development and are resilient to climate change. These international policies and frameworks assisted in the forming of national planning policy and legislative frameworks.

The policy and legislative frameworks considered in this research are illustrated in Table 4-1.

Table 4-1: Identified policy and legislative frameworks for review

IDENTIFIED POLICY AND LEGISLATIVE FRAMEWORKS

Constitution of the Republic of South Africa (Act 108 of 1996)

National Environmental Management Act 107 of 1998 (NEMA)

Municipal Systems Act 32 of 2000 (MSA)

National Urban Development Framework (2009) (NUDF)

Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act 16 of 2013 (SPLUMA)

National Strategy for Sustainable Development and Action Plan 2011-2014 (NSSD)

National Development Plan 2030 (NDP)

Each identified policy and legislative framework were discussed and elaborated on as a point of departure to determine the scope to include Third Places as part of mainstream planning approaches in South Africa.

4.3.1 Constitution of the Republic of South Africa (Act 108 of 1996)

The Constitution is the single most important piece of legislation within South Africa. its broad purpose is to:

- a) "Heal the divisions of the past and establish a society based on democratic values, social justice and fundamental human rights;
- b) Lay the foundations for a democratic and open society in which government is based on the will of the people and in which every citizen is equally protected by law;
- c) Improve the quality of life of all citizens and free the potential of each person; and
- d) Build a united and democratic South Africa able to take its rightful place as a sovereign state in the family of nations".

Furthermore, all laws are subject to the Constitution, and no law may be in any conflict whatsoever with it or its principles (Van Wyk, 1999:99). All development functions in South Africa therefore have to be executed in accordance with it and, according to Scheepers (2000:36), the 1996 Constitution is the first of its kind in that it is development-orientated and more specifically sustainable development orientated, as stated in Section 24(b)(iiii): everyone has the right to have the environment protected, for the benefit of present and future generations, through reasonable legislative and other measures that secure ecologically

sustainable development and use of natural resources while promoting justifiable economic and social development.

The democratic values of human dignity, equality and freedom are also established in the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa (Act 108 of 1996), where the state must respect, protect, promote and fulfil the rights in the Bill of Rights.

Furthermore, the Constitution confirms that everyone has the right to an environment that is not harmful to their health or well-being, through reasonable legislative and other measures that prevent pollution and ecological degradation, promote conservation, secure ecologically sustainable development and use of natural resources, while promoting justifiable economic and social development.

Within the Constitution no specific reference is made to public place planning or social sustainability. The Constitution does however refer to sustainable development in terms of the environment in section 24 and 152 of the legislation.

24. Environment. -Everyone has the right-

- (a) to an environment that is not harmful to their health or well-being; and
- (b) to have the environment protected, for the benefit of present and future generations, through reasonable legislative and other measures that-
 - (i) prevent pollution and ecological degradation;
 - (ii) promote conservation; and
 - (iii) secure ecologically sustainable development and use of natural resources while promoting justifiable economic and social development.
- 152. Objects of local government. -The objects of local government are-
 - (d) to promote a safe and healthy environment

The Constitution is thus set on the Bill of Rights, cooperative government, as well as the role of the different spheres in terms of the presidency, parliament, administration of justice and different provinces within South Africa. It is also clear that the Constitution plays a crucial role in the manner in which development and development planning is conducted. With reference to public place planning to enhance social sustainability, the Constitution prominently highlights the importance of sustainable development, aiming "to ensure the provision of services to communities in a sustainable manner", but no specific reference is made to the planning of public places to improve sustainable development, or more specifically social sustainability within South African cities.

4.3.2 National Environmental Management Act 107 of 1998 (NEMA)

NEMA provides all relevant parties with environmental management principles for application in decision making on matters affecting or concerning the environment and directs all provinces in South Africa to prepare an environmental implementation and management plan in accordance with Chapter 3 of this act.

In section 16(4)(b) of NEMA it is stated that municipalities should adhere to the relevant environmental implementation and management plans, and the principles contained in Section 2 [of NEMA] in the preparation of any policy, program or plan, including the establishment of integrated development plans and land development objectives.

The promotion and insurance of sustainable development is furthermore the main focus and purpose of NEMA, an environmental framework legislation providing for environmental management. This is achieved by utilising the environment in such a way that the needs of the public are met, and environmental preservation is ensured. Sustainable development as defined by the act is the collective consideration of social, economic and environmental factors into planning, implementation and decision-making processes as to ensure that the development serves current and future generations.

NEMA further strives to provide for cooperative, environmental governance by establishing principles for decision making on matters affecting the environment. NEMA states that everyone has the right to an environment that is not harmful to their health or well-being, although many inhabitants of South Africa do find themselves living in an environment threatening these aspects.

In terms of the three identified aspects of sustainable development, the state is obligated to respect, protect, promote and fulfil the social, economic and environmental rights of each citizen and strive to meet the basic needs of all inhabitants. This requires the collective consideration of social, economic and environmental factors in planning, as stated above. Conservation should also be promoted, and degradation of ecological systems should be eliminated and secured through justifiable urban development.

Although NEMA aims to "secure ecologically sustainable development and use of natural resources while promoting justifiable economic and social development", the act consists of a strong environmental perspective. Concerning the planning of public places within South Africa, the focus is shifted towards the social sustainability aspect in accordance with environmental and economic sustainability. Although public place planning should include all three dimensions of sustainable development, the link between planning for public places, more specifically Third Places, to enhance social sustainability has not been quantified.

4.3.3 Municipal Systems Act 32 of 2000 (MSA)

MSA aims to provide core principles, mechanisms and processes that are compulsory to enable municipalities to "... establish a simple and enabling framework for the core processes of planning, performance management, resource mobilisation and organisational change which underpin the notion of developmental local government".

This act further sets out legislation that enables municipalities to socially and economically uplift their communities by ensuring access to essential services. MSA defines development as sustainable development that includes integrated social, economic, environmental, spatial, infrastructural, institutional and organisational upliftment of the community. The aim is to improve the quality of life for inhabitants and to ensure that development serves present and future generations.

MSA is aimed at increasing the effectiveness of local governments in South Africa and, according to Scheepers (2000:45), is utilised whenever issues related to the process of managing affairs in local government are to be dealt with. The act furthermore seeks to establish an effective framework for integrated development in the form of an integrated development plan (IDP) to ensure municipal planning, performance management and the optimal use of resources.

In terms of the provisions of MSA, all local municipalities are required to compile IDP's for their area of jurisdiction, as explained by Harrison *et al.*, (2008:83). One of the key components of such plans is a spatial development framework that guides planning and future land development within the various municipalities (Todes *et al.*, 2010:416): "Spatial frameworks were intended to give effect to the principles and priorities of the IDP, and to act as a flexible instrument to manage urban growth and change within municipalities".

MSA was amended in 2011 with the creation of the Municipal Systems Amendment Act 7 of 2011. According to South African Government Information (2013) this newly amended act aims to professionalise local government to improve service delivery and performance management. The new act also aimed to instil a people-centred mindset in local government.

South African Government Information (2013) further states that the act also aims to:

- a) Ensure that the administrative apparatus of municipalities is staffed by appropriately qualified and competent persons to professionalise the municipality and thus improve service delivery.
- b) Ensure that employment contracts and performance agreements of municipal managers be consistent with the national systems and procedures.

c) Extend the minister's power to make regulations relating to macro-benefits.

MSA solely focusses on the implementation of the various regional frameworks within their specific municipal boundaries, highlighting the fact that improving the quality of life may consider any developing trends in the sustainable provision of municipal services generally. It is however important to recognise that the planning of public places and Third Places will only be effective if the strategic guidelines provided are implementable at local municipal level, where the focus is placed directly on the specific municipal area in terms of the urban environment to enhance social sustainability. No exclusive reference to the planning of Third Places with the aim to enhance social sustainability is included within the MSA.

4.3.4 National Urban Development Framework (2009) (NUDF)

This framework addresses the different challenges and opportunities that South African towns, cities and regions are facing, providing a nationwide view of how South African towns and cities could strengthen and support shared growth, progress and environmental sustainability. The framework is focused on environmental sustainability, where the development of greener buildings and renewable energy sources are encouraged. The framework also focuses on social equity, ensuring that urban and rural areas are not divided, but rather form part of a continued region.

NUDF does not offer comprehensive sectoral strategies that are relevant to urban areas within South Africa, but rather provides a planning and policy context on a larger scale for existing as well as future plans and initiatives.

Within this framework reference is made to facilitating sustainable livelihoods, ultimately affecting social sustainability, but there is no focus on the importance of planning for public places within urban areas of South Africa, based on the social benefits provided by enhanced social sustainability.

4.3.5 Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act 16 of 2013 (SPLUMA)

This act, inter alia, aims to provide a framework for spatial planning and land use management in South Africa to:

- a) Specify the relationship between the spatial planning and land use management systems and other kinds of planning.
- b) Provide for the inclusive, developmental, equitable and efficient spatial planning at the different spheres of government.
- c) Provide a framework for the monitoring, coordination and review the spatial planning and land use management systems.

- d) Provide a framework for policies, principles, norms and standards for spatial development planning and land use management.
- e) Address past spatial and regulatory imbalances.
- f) Promote greater consistency and uniformity in the application procedures and decision making by authorities responsible for land use decisions and development applications.
- g) Provide for the facilitation and enforcement of land use development measures.

SPLUMA replaced the town planning ordinances and the Development Facilitation Act used by planning departments within municipalities (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform Strategic Plan, 2015:5; South African Cities Network, 2015:19), currently serving as the main legislation governing planning.

SPLUMA is further set to provide a framework for spatial planning and land use management in the Republic of South Africa. The framework includes provision for green or public spaces within the municipal boundaries (Goosen, 2014:33).

The objects of this act are to:

- a) Provide for a uniform, effective and comprehensive system of spatial planning and land use management for the Republic.
- b) Ensure that the system of spatial planning and land use management promotes social and economic inclusion.
- c) Provide for development principles, norms and standards.
- d) Provide for the sustainable and efficient use of land.
- e) Provide for cooperative government and intergovernmental relations amongst the national, provincial and local spheres of government.
- f) Redress the imbalances of the past and to ensure that there is equity in the application of spatial development planning and land use management systems.

Since spatial planning has a long-term perspective, it is only fitting that it should include principles and goals of sustainability. SPLUMA (2013:18) further introduces spatial sustainability as a guiding principle, stating that spatial planning and land use management systems must do the following in order to promote spatial sustainability:

- a) Promote land development which is within the institutional, fiscal and administrative means of the country.
- b) Give special consideration to the protection of prime and unique agricultural land.
- c) Promote and stimulate effective and equitable functioning of land markets.
- Uphold the consistency of land use measured in accordance with applicable environmental management systems.

- e) Consider the current and future costs for the provision of infrastructure and social services in developments.
- f) Promote land development in sustainable locations and limit urban sprawl.
- g) Create viable communities.

Within SPLUMA, flexibility in spatial plans, policies and land use management systems are accommodated to ensure sustainable livelihoods. The importance of Third Place planning should be highlighted within SPLUMA, linking to the enhancement of social sustainability.

4.3.6 National Strategy for Sustainable Development and Action Plan 2011-2014 (NSSD)

This action plan consists of a strong vision in terms of a sustainable, economically prosperous and self-reliant nation, where a sustainability system approach could be reached when the economic system, the socio-political system and the ecosystem are embedded within each other and consequently integrated through the governance system, holding all systems intact.

NSSD has identified five strategic objectives in order to reach ultimate sustainability:

- a) Enhancing systems for integrated planning and implementation
- b) Sustaining our ecosystems and using natural resources efficiently
- c) Towards a green economy
- d) Building sustainable communities
- e) Responding effectively to climate change

NSSD is a proactive strategy aiming to regard sustainable development as a long-term commitment. The action plan combines environmental protection, social equity and economic efficiency together with the proposed visions and values of the country. Although no reference is made to the planning of Third Paces, there is a strong reference made to green infrastructure planning through building a green economy and safeguarding current ecosystems. This action plan therefore presents an understanding of sustainable development and explains the way forward in terms of an actionable plan with different strategic priorities. Although it does not exclusively refer to Third Places, it does refer to building sustainable communities, which could aid Third Place planning approaches, especially when linked to broader social sustainability.

4.3.7 National Development Plan 2030 (NDP)

The NDP has a vision for a better South Africa for all races, genders and religions. Certain visions and goals have been set out, which must be met in order for this plan to be successful. The vision for a better South-Africa, according to the NDP 2030, is a country in which the people can say "we feel loved, respected and cared for at home, in community and the public

institutions we have created. We feel understood. We feel needed. We feel trustful. We feel trusted. We feel accommodated. We feel informed. We feel healthy. We feel safe. We feel resourceful and inventive. We learn together. We talk to each other. We share our work. We play. We worship. We ponder and laugh. I have a space that I can call my own. This space I share. This space I cherish with others. I maintain it with others. I am not self-sufficient alone. We are self-sufficient in community. Through our service we show our solidarity. We enjoy the same quality of service. We are connected through our caring. Everywhere we go in our country, we hear the laughter of our children.

According to the NDP, the National Planning Commission proposes a national focus on spatial transformation across all geographical scales. The NDP was released by this commission in 2013 as an approach to eliminate poverty and reduce inequality by 2030 (National Planning Commission, 2013:24). The NDP was created in response to the National Planning Commission's diagnostic report (2011:19), which set out nine primary challenges:

- a) Poor educational outcomes
- b) High disease burden
- c) Divided communities
- d) Uneven public service delivery
- e) Spatial patterns which are marginalising the poor
- f) High unemployment
- g) Corruption
- h) An unsustainable resource intensive economy
- i) Crumbling infrastructure

The NDP (National Planning Commission, 2013:203) does make special mention of sustainable communities, stating that they are "built through well-structured development planning processes that help to guide them to optimally manage natural resources and environmental risks in the pursuit of social and economic goals". Chapter 8 of the NDP focusses on building sustainable human settlements, paying attention to the principles of sustainable development to which the state must adhere in its responsibility to build vibrant human settlements. Sustainable living environments are highlighted within the NDP, where Third Places could form part in providing these environments enhancing social sustainability.

4.3.8 Evaluation matrix of South African policy and legislative framework

Table 4-3 illustrates an evaluation matrix of the identified policy and legislative frameworks discussed in Chapter 4. The evaluation was based on the different indicators, as identified within each policy and legislative framework, linked to the objectives of sustainable development, social sustainability and public place planning.

Self-evaluation, also referred to as self-assessment (Boud & Falchikov, 1989:529) was applied in order to evaluate each included policy and legislative framework. Self-evaluation, which is formative (Black & Wiliam, 1998:7-8) in this research, was applied to encompass two key elements (Boud & Falchikov, 1989:529) in terms of the evaluation decision in this research chapter. Firstly, the identification of criteria (ranking scale) to be applied to the evaluation, and secondly the involvement of the researcher in ranking each specific policy and legislative framework regarding the scale on which each applicable element being evaluated is ranked on. This method is functional in making use of a ranking system concerning the criteria, illustrating the value to be added to each specific self-assessed element. Through applying the ranking system within this self-evaluation approach, a concomitant involvement of literature in establishing the criteria in terms of the ranking system is applied.

The evaluation was based on a three-tier ranking system to establish how comprehensively sustainable development, social sustainability and public place planning is dealt with within each identified policy and legislative framework. Table 4-2 illustrates the three-tier ranking scale applied for the evaluation matrix of the identified policy and legislative frameworks.

Table 4-2: Three-tier evaluation matrix ranking system of the identified policy and legislative frameworks

| CRITERIA | TIER | EVALUATION RANKING | | | | |
|--|-------|----------------------------|--|--|--|--|
| CKITEKIA | IILIX | SCALE | | | | |
| Three main indicators including the broader | 1 | Not at all | | | | |
| theme of sustainable development, social | 2 | Dealt with to some extent | | | | |
| sustainability and public place inclusion within | 2 | Dealt with to some extent | | | | |
| the policy and legislative frameworks. | 3 | Comprehensively dealt with | | | | |

Applying the ranking scale based on the criteria set out in Table 4-2, Table 4-3 reflects the evaluation made in terms of each policy and legislative framework.

The evaluation was based on the tier at which each policy and legislative framework addresses the broader theme of sustainable development, social sustainability and public place planning.

Tier 1 indicated that the policy and legislative framework did not address any of the three main indicators set out in the criteria. Tier 2 indicated that the main indicators were dealt with to some extent, meaning room exists for improving the approach towards sustainable development, social sustainability and public place planning. Tier 3 indicated that the main indicators were comprehensively dealt with within the policy or legislative framework. Following the evaluation of each policy and legislative framework, Table 4-3 captured the indicators motivating each evaluation.

Table 4-3: Evaluation matrix of purposefully selected policy and legislative frameworks

| | EVALUATION RANKING SCALE | | | | | | | | |
|--|--|---|--|---|-----------------------|------------------------------|--|--|--|
| LEGISLATION/ POLICY/ FRAMEWORK | RELEVANCI IO SUSTAINABLE DEVELORIVIENT | | RELEVANCY TO SO | OCIAL SUSTAINABILITY INCLUSION | RELEVANCY TO PUB | LIC PLACE PLANNING INCLUSION | | | |
| | TIER | INDICATOR FOR EVALUATION | TIER | INDICATOR FOR EVALUATION | TIER | INDICATOR FOR EVALUATION | | | |
| Constitution of the Republic of South Africa (Act 108 of 1996) | Tier 2: DEALT WITH BUT INSUFFICIENTLY | "secure ecologically sustainable development and use of natural resources while promoting justifiable economic and social development" "to ensure the provision of services to communities in a sustainable manner" "the need to provide municipal services in an equitable and sustainable manner" | Tier 2: DEALT WITH BUT INSUFFICIENTLY | "secure ecologically sustainable development and use of natural resources while promoting justifiable economic and social development" | Tier 1: NOT AT ALL | Not applicable | | | |
| National Environmental Management Act 107 of 1998 | Tier 2: DEALT WITH BUT INSUFFICIENTLY | "sustainable development requires the integration of social, economic and environmental factors in the planning, implementation and evaluation of decisions to ensure that development serves present and future generations" "secure ecologically sustainable development and use of natural resources while promoting justifiable economic and social development" "enable the Minister to monitor the achievement, promotion, and protection of a sustainable environment" | Tier 2: DEALT WITH BUT INSUFFICIENTLY | "sustainable development requires the integration of social, economic and environmental factors in the planning, implementation and evaluation of decisions to ensure that development serves present and future generations" "secure ecologically sustainable development and use of natural resources while promoting justifiable economic and social development" | Tier 1: NOT AT ALL | Not applicable | | | |
| Municipal Systems Act (Act 32 of 2000) | Tier 2: DEALT WITH BUT INSUFFICIENTLY | "development means sustainable development, and includes integrated social, economic, environmental, spatial, infrastructural, institutional, | Tier 2: DEALT WITH BUT INSUFFICIENTLY | "development means sustainable development, and includes integrated social, economic, environmental, spatial, infrastructural, institutional, | Tier 1: NOT AT ALL | Not applicable | | | |

| National Urban Development | Tier 2: | organisational and human resources upliftment of a community aimed at— (a) improving the quality of life of its members with specific reference to the poor and other disadvantaged sections of the community; and (b) ensuring that development serves present and future generations" "facilitating the provision of basic | Tier 2: | organisational and human resources upliftment of a community aimed at— (a) improving the quality of life of its members with specific reference to the poor and other disadvantaged sections of the community; and (b) ensuring that development serves present and future generations" "facilitating the provision of basic | Tier 2: | "government leadership can also |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Framework (2009) | DEALT WITH BUT INSUFFICIENTLY | services, sustainable livelihoods and human development in rural and other low-opportunity areas" "Government leadership can also help to raise awareness of the necessary sacrifices and procedures to create places where it is easier for people to adopt sustainable lifestyles" "called for more compact and coherent spatial development, with a more efficient and sustainable urban form" "facilitating the provision of basic services, sustainable livelihoods and human development in rural and other low opportunity areas" | DEALT WITH BUT INSUFFICIENTLY | services, sustainable livelihoods and human development in rural and other low opportunity areas" | DEALT WITH BUT INSUFFICIENTLY | help to raise awareness of the necessary sacrifices and procedures to create places where it is easier for people to adopt sustainable lifestyles" |
| Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act 16 of 2013 | Tier 2: DEALT WITH BUT INSUFFICIENTLY | "provide direction for strategic development" "flexibility in spatial plans, policies and land use management systems are accommodated to ensure sustainable livelihoods" | Tier 1: NOT AT ALL | Not applicable | Tier 2: DEALT WITH BUT INSUFFICIENTLY | "flexibility in spatial plans, policies and land use management systems are accommodated to ensure sustainable livelihoods" |
| National Strategy for Sustainable Development and Action Pan (2011-2014) | Tier 2: DEALT WITH BUT INSUFFICIENTLY | "South Africa's commitment to a long-term sustainable development trajectory that is economically, socially and environmentally sustainable." | Tier 2: DEALT WITH BUT INSUFFICIENTLY | "South Africa's commitment to a long-term sustainable development trajectory that is economically, socially and environmentally sustainable" | Tier 1: NOT AT ALL | Not applicable |

| | Tier 2: | "Infrastructure and access to | Tier 2: | "It should ensure optimal settlement | Tier 3: | "Promote mixed housing strategies | | |
|---------------------------|----------------|--|----------------|---------------------------------------|-----------------|---------------------------------------|--|--|
| National Development Plan | | sustainable livelihoods" | DEALT WITH | performances by developing public | | and more compact urban | | |
| 2030 | | DEALT WITH "create the conditions for more | | goods through investment in public | COMPREHENSIVELY | development to help people access | | |
| | | BUT humane – and environmentally | | transport, other economic and social | DEALT WITH | public spaces and facilities." | | |
| | INSUFFICIENTLY | sustainable – living and working | INSUFFICIENTLY | infrastructure, quality public spaces | | "Despite improvements, the | | |
| | | environments." | | and jobs." | | existing housing subsidy system | | |
| | | "As with any form of community | | "Daily interactions on an equal basis | | continues to fund top structures | | |
| | | building, the building of sustainable | | build social cohesion and common | | (houses) rather than producing | | |
| | | communities cannot be | | understanding. These interactions | | quality public spaces and | | |
| | | accomplished as a top-down | | will be promoted effectively when | | infrastructure in the area." | | |
| | | process, but must be the outcome of | | South Africans share more public | | "It should ensure optimal | | |
| | | engagement with participation by | | spaces." | | settlement performances by | | |
| | | communities." | | | | developing public goods through | | |
| | | | | | | investment in public transport, | | |
| | | | | | | other economic and social | | |
| | | | | | | infrastructure, quality public spaces | | |
| | | | | | | and jobs." | | |
| | | | | | | "Funding arrangements and | | |
| | | | | | | programmes that would channel | | |
| | | | | | | resources into community facilities, | | |
| | | | | | | public infrastructure and public | | |
| | | | | | | spaces, and not just into housing." | | |
| | | | | | | "To make it easier for South | | |
| | | | | | | Africans to interact with each other | | |
| | | | | | | across racial and class divides, the | | |
| | | | | | | country needs to | | |
| | | | | | | improve public spaces and public | | |
| | | | | | | services." | | |
| | | | | | | "Daily interactions on an equal | | |
| | | | | | | basis build social cohesion and | | |
| | | | | | | common understanding. These | | |
| | | | | | | interactions will be promoted | | |
| | | | | | | effectively when South Africans | | |
| | | | | | | share more public spaces" | | |

Source: Constitution of the Republic of South Africa (1996); Municipal Systems Act (2000); National Environmental Management Act (1998); National Urban Development Framework (2009); National Strategy for Sustainable Development and Action Pan (2011-2014); National Development Plan (2030); Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act (2013)

4.4 Conclusion

South Africa, as a developing country, face numerous challenges relating to sustainability within urban environments (Badenhorst *et al.*, 2005:4; Dewar & Uytenbogaardt, 1995:88; Jürgens *et al.*, 2003:35; Kay, 2007:1; Parker, 2014; Southworth, 2007:4) (cross-reference to Section 4.2). Poverty and basic service provision are some examples of the more pressing issues present in South Africa, along with budget constraints which limits the scope for the planning of Third Places (cross-reference to Section 4.2). Social issues in South Africa (cross-reference to Section 4.2) are also different to those faced globally and therefore a need exists for a context-based framework, facilitating the planning of Third Places in South Africa. What is further required in terms of these local urban realities and challenges, is a sensitive understanding of the problems that South African cities are facing (Dewar & Uytenbogaardt, 1995:88; Parker, 2014).

Although the provision of public places and inclusion of strategies to enhance sustainable development and social sustainability is dealt with within applicable policy and legislative frameworks, a lack concerning the enforcement thereof exists, leading to insufficiency. The need and importance of social sustainability within the broader discourse concerning sustainable development has not been explored from a spatial planning approach. Development provision tactics and implementation strategies are not enforced to ensure the success of public places within urban areas of South Africa. A continued need exists for the planning of public places, as the benefits thereof in terms of the environment and its residents are pervasive. As the public places provided require ongoing protection, maintenance and transformation by the local municipalities, it is necessary to be addressed within all local influencing policy and legislative frameworks.

The provision made for the inclusion of public place planning to enhance social sustainability could furthermore be addressed and categorised under sustainable development, as most of the policy and legislative frameworks do address sustainable development, social sustainability and public place planning to some extent. However, the purpose and specific meaning regarding the provision of public places to enhance social sustainability are often lost in terms of the benefits provided within urban areas of South Africa. The provision of public places is more evident on local levels where local frameworks do articulate the importance thereof on a small scale, as these frameworks are directly influential.

Chapter 4 concluded the literature investigation of this research. Chapter 5 introduced the empirical investigation, aiming to inform the refinement of theory-based framework for the planning of Third Places.

CHAPTER 5: EMPIRICAL INVESTIGATION

5.1 Introduction

The literature investigation of this research reflected on social sustainability and the interface with Third Places, along with the South African scope concerning the policy and legislative frameworks supporting the planning of Third Places in local context. No framework currently exists within broader spatial planning approaches facilitating the planning of Third Places to enhance social sustainability in South Africa. This research proposed a theory-based framework (cross-reference to Section 3.5), refined within Chapter 5 based on international best practices and planning approaches by means of a case study review (Phase 1), as well as expert perspectives (Phase 2) on the subject matter. Phase 1 and Phase 2 of the empirical investigation ultimately guided the compilation of a refined framework for enhanced social sustainability through the planning of Third Places in the South African context. Figure 5-1 illustrates the structure of Chapter 5.

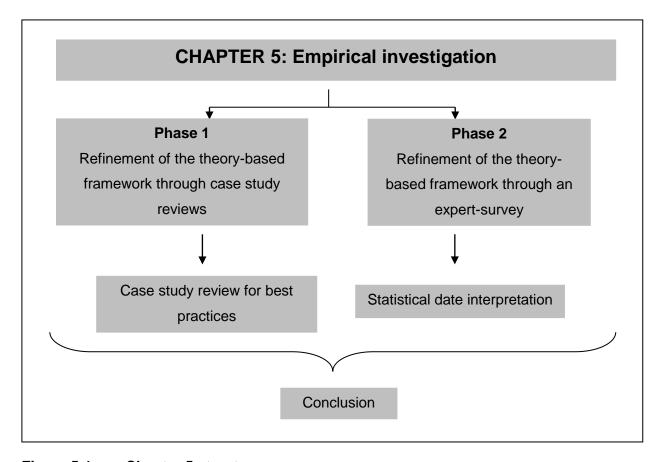


Figure 5-1: Chapter 5 structure

5.2 Phase 1: Case study reviews

The detailed methodological approach of Phase 1 of the empirical investigation was described in Chapter 1 (cross-reference to Section 1.5.2). Five international case studies were purposefully selected as an informative sample, to be reviewed and identify international best practices for the planning of Third Places.

The informative sample comprised of five international case studies identified on a global scale, based on their functionality as public spaces and their relevance to sustainable development and broader social sustainability objectives. The sample of five case studies was neither a comprehensive sample nor was it representative of Third Place planning approaches. It was rather an informative sample and provided insight into the application of the notion of Third Places and the planning thereof (Kim & Skinner 2013:385).

The case studies that formed part of the case study review for best practice identification included:

- 1. Las Ramblas Boulevard in Barcelona, Spain
- 2. Bryant Park in New York City, United States of America
- 3. The High Line in New York City, United States of America
- 4. Noriega Street Parklet in San Francisco, United States of America
- 5. Perth Cultural Centre in Perth, Western Australia

Figure 5-2 illustrates the approximate location of each case study within a global context.

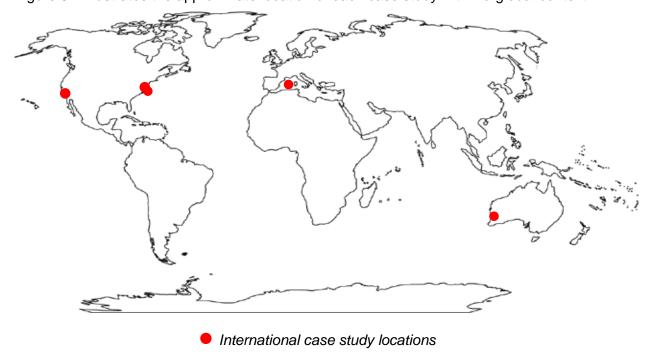


Figure 5-2: Location pin of identified international case studies

These case studies were reflected on in evidence-based research to identify best practices relating to design elements in terms of social sustainability, public places and the planning of Third Places, to inform the refined theory-based framework for the planning of Third Places.

5.2.1 Case 1: The case of Las Ramblas Boulevard, Barcelona, Spain

5.2.1.1 Location overview

Barcelona, the capital city of Catalonia in Spain, is classified as a bustling Mediterranean city with history dating back to the Roman era (Hansen, 2015:3). With a population of 1,6 million within its city limits, Barcelona is classified as the country's second most populous municipality and the sixth-most populous urban area in the European Union (Walker & Porraz, 2003:3). This major global city remains one of the world's leading tourist, economic, trade fair and cultural centres. Large-scale modernisation took place to host the 1992 Summer Olympics, (Nelson, 2004:3; Marshall, 2000:303), and currently a unique blend of new and old (ancient charm) exists within the city (Tripomatic, 2016:2) regarding city planning.

5.2.1.2 Planning principles employed in Las Ramblas Boulevard

Barcelona is known as a leader in innovative planning worldwide and is celebrated for its accessible open public spaces and city walkability. Taking a distinctive approach to urban governance (Marshall, 2000:299), Barcelona is well known for urban planning and urban regeneration.

The provision of public place and space, green urbanism and liveability within Barcelona, centralising activity on different planning scales, has contributed to the environmental, social and economic development aspects of the city impacting overall sustainable development.

The city of Barcelona includes the following guiding principles in its urban planning (Nelson, 2004:1):

- Focus on the creation of public amenities in dilapidated neighbourhoods.
- Orienting the city back to the Mediterranean Sea by creating accessible and usable beaches.
- Provide adequate public facilities within every neighbourhood.
- Reuse of brownfields sustainable planning.
- Restricting urban sprawl by focusing on transformative redevelopment rather than new development.
- Reclaiming famous inner courtyards that act as open space within each block through redevelopment.

Within Barcelona the planning function in terms of the council are spread between three plenary council commissions to create good urban form, while respecting the historical growth (Marshall, 2000:300-304). These commissions include housing and land policy, sustainability and urban ecology and infrastructure and urbanism.

Furthermore, community green space and public place on a large and small scale and ease of access within and around the city centre have proven to be successful in terms of access, linkages, compact design and public spaces (Nelson, 2004:4). The topography in Barcelona has contributed to keeping the city fairly compact, also impacting on sustainability aspects (Nelson, 2004:4). The aim is reusing infrastructure, where advantage has been taken of industrial sites for development as heavy industry and shipping become less prevalent. For this reason, Barcelona has become a leader in the practice of aiming to adapt to the pressures and opportunities of globalisation though sustainable alternatives.

With specific reference to public places within the urban boundaries of Barcelona, the Metropolitan Master Plan and the Urban Planning Law of Catalonia serve as the most relevant planning policies for the metropolitan area (Hansen, 2015:5). Serving as a supplementary helpful tool, the Green Infrastructure and Biodiversity Plan includes enhancing the connectivity of green infrastructure, conservation, re-naturalisation of the city and the creation of new green spaces (Barcelona Green Infrastructure and Biodiversity Plan 2020, 2013; Hansen, 2015:5).

Barcelona is known for its lively public spaces and places, where La Ramblas Boulevard, one of the landmarks of Barcelona, is classified as one of the greatest of them all (PPS, 2015). Here tourists and locals are presented with approximately 1,3 kilometres of endless entertainment, stretching from Plaça Catalunya, the central transport hub in Barcelona considered to be Barcelona's city centre, to the statue of Christopher Columbus in the port. The boulevard is pedestrian-orientated, with an approximate 60 feet-wide central walkway in the centre. Shops, café's, markets, adequate seating, artists and performers are offered along this boulevard, where towering street trees are also a plus (Alexander & Tang, 2010:1). Pedestrians have right of way, and cars are restricted to narrow lanes on either side of the boulevards, accommodating pedestrians at every intersection of the boulevard. The Las Ramblas Boulevard contributes in creating a lively community (Nelson, 2004:4) and exemplifies Barcelona's success in having public spaces for people to meet and socialise. However, the Las Ramblas Boulevard, generating over-tourism, has become a victim of its own success, facing numerous challenges and realities regarding safety, real estate speculations and displacement of inhabitants (Stephenwoo, 2016).

The success and implementation of the Las Ramblas Boulevard, along with its planning methods and approaches in terms of implementation and maintenance, is due to a combination of factors as portrayed in Table 5-1, in addition to a strong public participation approach.

Table 5-1: Success factors of Las Ramblas Boulevard

| FACTOR / INITIATIVE | DESCRIPTION | Social | inclusivity | Multi- functionality | Accessibility | Perceptibility | Marketability | Environmental sensitivity | Adaptability | Intrinsic |
|------------------------|--|--------|-------------|-------------------------|---------------|----------------|---------------|---------------------------|--------------|-----------|
| Uses and activities | Variety of eateries, shops, markets, street performers, public art and cultural institutions along the artful street create an attractive and diverse experience for pedestrians. | Х | | Х | | Х | Х | | | Х |
| Access and linkages | The boulevard is physically well-connected to key areas within Barcelona and consists of entrances almost every 13 feet. | | | | Х | | | | Х | |
| Atmosphere | History and character, dating back hundreds of years. | | | | | Х | Х | | | Х |
| Sociability | Buildings, paths, vegetation and details are proportioned for pedestrians to have pleasant spaces to interact in. | X | | Х | | Х | | Х | | Х |
| Green | Trees stretching from the northern end to the most southern end of the Las Ramblas Boulevard contribute to overall sustainability. | | | | | | | х | | |
| Building form | Boulevard with a 36-80 foot-wide pedestrian strip down the centre. Sidewalks usually less than 10 feet wide, encouraging walking in the centre. On each side of the strip one or two lanes of traffic with a lane for parking and deliveries (reserves the centre of the street for pedestrians and the side traffic lanes for autos). Arrangement of building in a grid form. Buildings arranged closely, and small alleys act as service roads between buildings. Only one-way roads are provided, to avoid traffic congestions. Walkways link from one place to another. The street is lined by five to seven story buildings with complex facades, textures and ornamental details. Majority of the buildings are influenced by Gothic architecture. | х | | | X | | | | X | |
| Comfort and image | The street width, building height and landscaping work together to create a pedestrian-friendly environment. The amenities and comfort of the place can contribute by having a pedestrian prioritised street and the harmony between street width, building height, landscaping and intensity of usage create a pleasant pedestrian experience. A mix of activities promotes the character and liveability of the area, including landscaping, public art, lighting, seating, safety and public drinking fountains. | | | | Х | Х | х | | | |
| Construction | The pavement wave pattern implemented on La Rambla Boulevard is designed for rainwater flow and drainage. Interlocking pavers are used to differentiate between pedestrian walkways and the road. | | | | | | | Х | | |

Source: Author's own construction based on Alexander and Tang (2010:1)

Considering the Las Ramblas Boulevard, this Third Place exemplifies opportunities provided for social interaction due to the social stage that is set, as well as the variety of activities provided, which contributes to user regularity. Contributions are made towards the enhancement of bringing the youth and adults into association with one another through the social stage provided, fostering social interaction, integration and civic pride through recreation. This directly affects human health and well-being (physical, mental and psychological).

5.2.1.3 Visual illustrations of Third Place planning in Las Ramblas Boulevard

The following images illustrate the Las Ramblas Boulevard from an urban or city plan scale and a street view, illustrating specific initiatives incorporated to enhance the planning of Third Places. A focused green approach can be identified along with car-free zones, lighting for a safe and inviting feeling, and elements separating car and pedestrian zones.



Figure 5-3: Las Ramblas Boulevard illustrations of Third Place planning

Source: The Savvy Backpacker (2017)

5.2.1.4 Case study review for best practices in Las Ramblas Boulevard

Following the introduction and background of Barcelona, and the broader planning approaches of the city and the Third Place in question (Las Ramblas Boulevard), the specific case study

identified is assessed accordingly to identify best practices relating to the planning of Third Places, and the linkages with broader social sustainability. The review was based on the theory-based framework developed in the literature investigation of this research (cross-reference to Section 3.5). Best practices are identified (in Section 5.2.6) to refine the proposed framework for enhanced social sustainability through the planning of Third Places.

Table 5-2: Case 1 review and best practice identification

| | | Las Ramblas Boulevard review | | |
|--|---|---|---|---|
| Planning approach design considerations and interpretation in terms of Third Place objectives | Planning guidelines | Third Place planning considerations to enhance social sustainability | Indicators motivating case study | |
| Social inclusivity Creation of a platform for community cohesion and social inclusion by improving the ability and opportunity on which individuals and groups take part in society. The fostering of social activities on neutral ground. | place attraction through synergy sense of place welcoming space with diverse uses and users sustainable approach community priority | Creation of a platform for community cohesion and social inclusion Public place on neutral ground where individuals and communities wish to gather and interact outside of the work or home realm Creation and maintenance of the conditions under which humans and nature can exist in productive harmony within urban areas (cross-reference to Section 2.2, Section 2.5 and Section 2.7) | The size, form and facilities allow for social interaction, creating a sense of place and belonging for every user. A social stage is set through opportunities provided for interaction. These opportunities are influenced by the different activities, amenities and attractions. Green initiatives are evident through the incorporation of green infrastructure. The space is designed according to a self-sustained approach. | |
| Multi-functionality Active space enhancing characteristic uniqueness, through providing a variety (10+) of activities and amenities to focus on the enhancement of the human experience for each individual within the Third Place. | user-need diversity social and functional diversity combined services and activities (10+) | Organising and offering activities to foster active social interaction Focus on the human experience within the Third Place Big or small natural areas varied in quality (cross-reference to Section 2.7.1, Section 3.2.2 and Section 3.4) | The diverse activities ensure a diverse user group and a vibrant atmosphere. With constant changing activities according to seasonal changes, regularity and diversity is ensured. The human experience is enhanced with a variety of amenities, attractions and activities: seating, play spaces to enjoy, art to touch, music to hear, food to eat, history to experience, people to meet, books to read, water features. | *Mixed uses and users impact regularity |
| Accessibility Internal and external place connectedness encouraging convenient pedestrian movement flow. | - entrance and exit to and from space - safety perception - walkability - utilise shared space through mixed-use - reinforce linkages | Enhance the number of visitors that frequently visit the Third Place, due to convenience encouraging regularity Planning on different scales enforcing an integrated planning approach and maximising the opportunities provided (cross-reference to Section 2.7.1 and Section 3.2.1) | Large in size, more than 1 entrance and exit to the space and central location. Enclosure is assured by the layout and the buildings surrounding the space. The space, only catering to pedestrians, is enhanced through street level elevation. Variety in scale development is visible in the space but are well integrated to ensure connectivity (street level, space and surrounding building ensuring enclosure). | |

| Perceptibility The display of social niceties to enhance the overall character (sense of place) through smart and adaptation designs. | public furniture and facilities availability aesthetic values and attractiveness flexibility for users scale diversity | Display of social niceties and contributes to public places where regular, voluntary gatherings of individuals occur Representation of a personal experience (cross-reference to Section 2.7 and Section 2.7.1) | The space is welcoming and comfortable with active facades and high safety perceptions. Green urbanism is included, ensuring nature is visible within the space. Visually the space is highly appealing and attractive with different amenities interacting within the space. Public art and scale diversity are implemented with regards to buildings, amenities and pedestrian friendly areas. | |
|---|---|--|--|--|
| Marketability The attractiveness, practicality and usefulness for voluntary gatherings to occur through the establishment of user need attraction for regularity. | - quality of space enhancing a unique selling point | Diverse user-need attraction inviting lingering and regularity (cross-reference to Section 2.7.1) | The space has become a tourist attraction due to the quality and uniqueness of the space, providing a stage for interaction. | *Reclaim urban space for public use |
| Environmental sensitivity Enhancement of a sustainable green design for current and future use, relating to natural environmental diversity. | - sustainable practice approach - green initiatives | Create, enhance and restore ecological, biodiversity and ecosystem conservation and substitute grey infrastructure in urban areas (cross-reference to Section 2.7.2, Table 2.4) | Grey infrastructure is substituted regarding greenery (green urbanism) and is incorporated in the boulevard. | *Respect historical growth of public areas |
| Adaptability Compact layout design in context through incorporating multi-scale interconnected systems for the Third Place to be modified. | context consideration,design in contextexperimental designday- and night usage | Physical design encouraging compact design for social interaction encouragement Incorporating a smart and embracing design, where space embraces nature (cross-reference to Section 2.7 and Section 3.4) | Surrounding buildings of the boulevard ensures a compact layout. Due to the layout of the space, seasonal flexibility is limited during winter seasons. The layout does however ensure diversity and flexibility. | *Focus on redevelopment rather than new development *The urban environment should remain fairly compact to impact sustainability |
| Intrinsic connectivity Mental and emotional sense of well-being based on person-process-place attachment. | - sense of authenticity - sense of place | Person-process-place concept enhancing place attachment (cross-reference to Section 2.6) | Sense of place is created through regular use due to the sense of community created when in the space. | *Variety uses ensures an individual experience for all |

5.2.2 Case 2: The case of Bryant Park, New York, United States of America

5.2.2.1 Location overview

Bryant Park (38 860 m²), located in the New York City borough of Manhattan, is an ever popular destination and referred to as Manhattan's Town Square. The park is famous for its lush gardens, free activities, public services, inviting feeling and liveliness, and is visited by more than six million locals and tourists each year (Bryant Park, 2017). The park is also conveniently and strategically located adjacent to the New York Public Library. Although the park forms part of the New York City Department of Parks and Recreation, Bryant Park is privately-managed by non-profit corporation Bryant Park Corporation (BPC).

Nestled between New York's iconic skyscrapers, Bryant Park is an oasis of lush green lawns. As illustrated in Figure 5-4, the park consists of different amenities (Bryant Park, 2017). The city park, also presenting itself as a Third Place, is a social place where people meet, eat lunch, chat, stroll, listen to music, work, or simply sit, think and observe (Bryant Park, 2017).



Figure 5-4: Bryant Park layout Source: Bryant Park (2017)

5.2.2.2 Planning principles employed in Bryant Park

From Potter's Field in 1686 to a reservoir in 1842, to one of the world's busiest public spaces, Bryant Park boasts a rich history (Lydon *et al.*, 1998:11). The square then became a park in transition, with redesign commencing in 1934 (Saphan *et al.*, 2016:3). The modern Bryant Park

then came into existence in 1979. A seven-year push combining supplementary park maintenance, temporary kiosks and public events ranging from historical park tours to concerts reduced crime by 92%, doubling the number of annual visitors. As popularity of the park increased, new entrances were incorporated to increase visibility and design of the park. During the 1990's, various facilities within the park were opened in stages. During April 1992, Bryant Park formally reopened, increasing property value in the surrounding areas, providing a multitude of free and engaging activities, and offering a free public Wi-Fi zone. However, this plot of green public spaces has never worked as the refuge from urban tensions that a city park should be capable of providing (Goldberger, 1983). Until 1983 no maintenance or renovation plans were set in place for Bryant Park. Only recently Bryant park has succeeded in its expectations to a large extent.

With regard to the New York City planning system in terms of public spaces and Third Places, various planning approaches, guidelines and initiatives form part of the general planning system. The city aims to provide to the needs of the locals and tourists, with consideration of their environment.

5.2.2.2.1 Parks, open spaces and recreational facilities

The parks, open spaces and recreational facilities guidelines set for New York City include objectives and strategies to locate and design parks, open spaces and recreational facilities for the residents and tourists. This automatically encourages physical activity. In accordance with these public facilities, buildings should be designed to enhance and provide easy access to the parks and open spaces and should form part of large-scale developments near public spaces (Bloomberg *et al.*, 2010:30-34).

The guidelines include:

- Improve safe and visible bicycle and pedestrian routes.
- In the design of parks and open spaces, provide facilities like paths, running tracks, playgrounds, sports courts, and drinking fountains. People are more active in parks that include facilities like basketball and racquetball courts, incorporating such recreational areas is therefore essential.
- Locate new projects near existing public and private recreational facilities and encourage development of new facilities, including indoor activity spaces.
- Design parks, open spaces and recreational facilities to complement the cultural preferences of the local population, and accommodate a range of age groups, including children and their parents or guardians. Co-locating physical activity spaces for children and their caretakers can simultaneously promote physical activity in different age groups.

Create partnerships with organisations to sponsor and maintain green spaces and gardens
on building sites. Outdoor spaces that are adopted by volunteers are more vital and
beautiful. Building owners can seek partnerships with local organisations that promote
horticulture or other forms of green space as a cost-effective way to maintain outdoor
spaces.

5.2.2.2.2 Active design guidelines, promoting physical activity and health in design

Active design is environmental design that encourages stair climbing, walking, cycling, transit use, active recreation, and healthy eating (Bloomberg *et al.*, 2010:6). The Active Design Guidelines initiative was the city's first publication to address those responsible for the planning and construction of buildings, streets and neighbourhoods, and to highlight their role in terms of health. These guidelines also focus on a more liveable and hospitable New York City. The guidelines seek to identify opportunities to increase daily physical activity, including measures such as making stairs more visible and providing inviting streetscapes for pedestrians and bicyclists (Bloomberg *et al.*, 2010:4). These guidelines also serve to benefit the environment by reducing energy use in buildings.

The Active Design Guidelines draws upon specific examples to illustrate the most effective design strategies for achieving a more physically active lifestyle in the city (Bloomberg *et al.*, 2010:5).

The key recommended measures include:

- Develop and maintain mixed land use in city neighbourhoods.
- Improve access to and from transit facilities.
- Improve access to plazas, parks, open spaces and recreational facilities, and design these spaces to maximise their active use where appropriate.
- Improve access to full-service grocery stores and fresh produce.
- Design accessible, pedestrian-friendly streets with high connectivity, traffic-calming features, landscaping, lighting, benches and water fountains.
- Facilitate cycling for recreation and transportation by developing continuous bicycle networks and incorporating infrastructure like safe indoor and outdoor bicycle parking.

The success and implementation of Bryant Park, based on the physical features, along with its planning methods and approaches in terms of implementation and maintenance is due to a combination of factors as portrayed in Table 5-3.

 Table 5-3:
 Success factors of Bryant Park

| FACTOR / INITIATIVE | DESCRIPTION | Social | inclusivity | Multi- | runctionality | Accessibility | Perceptibility | Marketability | Environmental sensitivity | Adaptability | Intrinsic connectivity |
|------------------------|--|--------|-------------|--------|---------------|---------------|----------------|---------------|---------------------------|--------------|---------------------------|
| Imageability | The quality of a place that makes it distinct, recognisable, and | | | | | | | | | | |
| | memorable. A place has high imageability when specific | | | | | | V | V | | | \ \ \ |
| | physical elements and their arrangement capture attention, | | | | | | Χ | X | | | X |
| | evoke feelings and create a lasting impression. | | | | | | | | | | |
| Enclosure | The degree to which streets and other public spaces are | | | | | | | | | | |
| | visually defined by buildings, walls, trees and other vertical | Х | | | | Χ | | | | | |
| | elements. | | | | | | | | | | |
| Human scale | The size, texture and articulation of physical elements that | | | | | | | | | | |
| | match the size and proportions of humans and, equally | | | | | Χ | Χ | | | | |
| | important, correspond to the speed at which humans walk. | | | | | | | | | | |
| Transparency | The degree to which people can see or perceive objects and | | | | | | | | | | |
| | activity, especially human activity, beyond the edge of a street | | | Х | | Χ | Χ | | | Χ | |
| | and within a public place. | | | | | | | | | | |
| Complexity | Referring to the visual richness of a place. The complexity of a | | | | | | | | | ., | |
| | place depends on the variety of the physical environment. | | | Χ | | | | | | X | |
| Green | Implementation of green elements. Setting a stage for human | | | | | | | | ., | | |
| approach | and nature to interact. | Х | | | | | | | X | | |

Source: Author's own construction based on Bloomberg et al. (2010:23); Saphan et al. (2016:3)

The New York City Parks and Recreation Department adopted various policies, frameworks and planning principles ensuring safe, maintained and accessible public places for its residents. Conceptual planning is integrated in the developing of parks and public places, offering community participation. This is where community input meetings are held, and the adopted plan and vision includes a participatory approach.

Considering Bryant Park, this Third Place exemplifies green approaches incorporated to enhance social sustainability concerning a balance found between human and nature. With variety of seasonal activities incorporated, the use of the space is enhanced through regularity. Social sustainability is thus improved through the encouragement of community cohesion, fostering of social interaction, child development through child interactional opportunities, impact on human health and well-being (physical, mental and psychological), as well as the improvement of quality of life concerning urban liveability.

5.2.2.3 Illustrations of Third Place planning in Bryant Park

The following images illustrate Bryant Park from both a bird's eye and street view. Strong approaches towards green urbanism are incorporated within Bryant Park. The Third Place is also designed to be able to incorporate a variety of lively elements for day- and night use and provide different social activities, setting a social stage for different user groups. Contributing to encouraging an inviting atmosphere, this Third Place also provides for adequate seating options for people to linger within and interact with the natural space provided.







Figure 5-5: Bryant Park illustrations of Third Place planning

Source: Bryant Park (2017)

5.2.2.4 Case study review for best practices in Bryant Park

Following the introduction and background of New York City, and the broader planning approaches of the city and the Third Place concerned, the specific case study identified (Bryant Park) is evaluated accordingly. The review was based on the theory-based framework developed in the literature investigation of this research (cross-reference to Section 3.5).

Table 5-4: Case 2 review and best practice identification

| Bryant Park review | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|---|---|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Planning approach design considerations and interpretation in terms of Third Place objectives | Planning guidelines | Third Place planning considerations to enhance social sustainability | Indicators motivating case study | Best practice identification (Case study specific) | | | | | | |
| Social inclusivity Creation of a platform for community cohesion and social inclusion by improving the ability and opportunity on which individuals and groups take part in society. The fostering of social activities on neutral ground. | place attraction through synergy sense of place welcoming space with diverse uses and users sustainable approach community priority | Creation of a platform for community cohesion and social inclusion Public place on neutral ground where individuals and communities wish to gather and interact outside of the work or home realm Creation and maintenance of the conditions under which humans and nature can exist in productive harmony within urban areas (cross-reference to Section 2.2, Section 2.5 and Section 2.7) | Social cohesion is visible through the interactional platform that is set in the space. The space lend itself towards a park development, with different facilities provided. Green initiatives are thus well catered for. | *The place should complement the cultural preference of the surrounding community | | | | | | |
| Multi-functionality Active space enhancing characteristic uniqueness, through providing a variety (10+) of activities and amenities to focus on the enhancement of the human experience for each individual within the Third Place. | user-need diversity social and functional diversity combined services and activities (10+) | Organising and offering activities to foster active social interaction Focus on the human experience within the Third Place Big or small natural areas varied in quality (cross-reference to Section 2.7.1, Section 3.2.2 and Section 3.4) | Regularity of users due to the location and diverse activities provided. The space is active and vibrant due to different activities. The human experience is enhanced with a variety of amenities, attractions and activities. The multi-functionality encourages regularity. | *Variety for day- and night use and seasonal changes in terms of amenities and services/ activities provided to ensure all year-round regularity of users in the space | | | | | | |
| Accessibility Internal and external place connectedness encouraging convenient pedestrian movement flow. | entrance and exit to and from space safety perception walkability utilise shared space through mixed-use reinforce linkages | Enhance the number of visitors that frequently visit the Third Place, due to convenience encouraging regularity Planning on different scales enforcing an integrated planning approach and maximising the opportunities provided (cross-reference to Section 2.7.1 and Section 3.2.1) | More than one entrance and exit to the space for convenience. Surrounding buildings ensure well defined enclosure and is pedestrian friendly due to enhancement of the space from street level. | *Increase visibility by increasing entrances | | | | | | |

| Perceptibility The display of social niceties to enhance the overall character (sense of place) through smart and adaptation designs. | public furniture and facilities availability aesthetic values and attractiveness flexibility for users scale diversity | Display of social niceties and contributes to public places where regular, voluntary gatherings of individuals occur Representation of a personal experience (cross-reference to Section 2.7 and Section 2.7.1) Facilities (seating arrangements) provided cater for comfort in the space. The space caters for both human and nature and is flexible to seasonal changes. The green initiatives and public amenities provide for an attractive and visually appealing Third Place. | |
|---|---|--|--|
| Marketability The attractiveness, practicality and usefulness for voluntary gatherings to occur through the establishment of user need attraction for regularity. | - quality of space enhancing a unique selling point | Diverse user-need attraction inviting lingering and regularity (cross-reference to Section 2.7.1) The quality of the space is visible through the user groups, different functions and location within the city, aiding in sustainability of the environment and the users. | *Engaging activities for the people at no cost |
| Environmental sensitivity Enhancement of a sustainable green design for current and future use, relating to natural environmental diversity. | sustainable practiceapproachgreen initiatives | Create, enhance and restore ecological, biodiversity and ecosystem conservation and substitute grey infrastructure in urban areas (cross-reference to Section 2.7.2, Table 2.4) The space is integrated with a park, relating the design to the natural environment where green initiatives are considered. | |
| Adaptability Compact layout design in context through incorporating multi-scale interconnected systems for the Third Place to be modified. | context consideration, design in context experimental design day- and night usage | Physical design encouraging compact design for social interaction encouragement Incorporating a smart and embracing design, where space embraces nature (cross-reference to Section 2.7 and Section 3.4) The park is situated within the hub of New York City but is compatible with its surroundings due to the location and close amenities such as the New York Public Library. The layout caters for flexibility and the diverse activities incorporated within the space. Seasonal changes affect the space especially during the winter season. | *Incorporate activities in stages, cost effective |
| Intrinsic connectivity Mental and emotional sense of well-being based on person-process-place attachment. | - sense of authenticity - sense of place | Person-process-place concept enhancing place attachment (cross-reference to Section 2.6) A sense of place is created through the scale of development (human scale) for the diverse user groups. | |

5.2.3 Case 3: The case of the High Line, New York, United States of America

5.2.3.1 Location overview

The High Line, now a Third Place, was built on a historic freight rail line elevated above the streets on Manhattan's West Side. The rail line was destined for demolition, as it went out of use in 1980. Through innovative programming and unique designing techniques, a green and vibrant public place was created, providing a sustainable and engaging community in and around the High Line, New York City's only elevated park. Today the High Line is a continuous greenway of 2,3 kilometres and features more than 500 species of plants and trees. It is maintained and operated by the non-profit conservancy Friends of the High Line, in partnership with the New York City Department of Parks and Recreation. The park reshaped the New Yorkers' thinking with regard to public places and their city in a profound way. In addition to the various shops, art commissions, food vendors and free programmes, residents visit the High Line to linger, interact and enjoy city views.

Although the High Line is an icon for sustainability in urban design, this attraction has brought in many tourists. As a result, the High Line is referred to a "tourist clogged catwalk". The increase in tourists has in addition resulted in an increase in prices in the area, not taking low-income residents in consideration (Ferrier, 2016).



Figure 5-6: Layout of the High Line

Source: High Line (2017)

5.2.3.2 Planning principles employed in the High Line

Along with strong community engagement principles and the planning principles put forward in the case of Bryant Park (Alvarez, 2012:7), the High Line employs three main design principles, illustrated in Table 5-5, as part of its success.

Table 5-5: Success factors of the High Line

| FACTOR / INITIATIVE | DESCRIPTION | Social inclusivity | Multi- functionality | Accessibility | Perceptibility | Marketability | Environmental sensitivity | Adaptability | Intrinsic connectivity |
|------------------------|---|-----------------------|-------------------------|---------------|----------------|---------------|---------------------------|--------------|---------------------------|
| The structure | Converting each of the three sections of the High Line from an out-of-use railroad to a public place involved planning, community input, and work by some of the city's most inventive designers. Also, more than two years of construction per section was required. | Х | Х | Х | х | х | | Х | |
| Planting design | The High Line's planting design was inspired by the current landscape that grew on the out-of-use elevated rail tracks during the 25 years after trains stopped running and the line was abandoned. The species of perennials, grasses, shrubs and trees were chosen for their hardiness, sustainability, and textural and colour variation, with a focus on native species. Many of the species that originally grew on the High Line's rail bed are incorporated into the park's landscape today. Nearly half of the plant species and cultivars planted on the High Line are native to the United States. | | | | X | | х | | |
| Sustainable practices | The way in which the High Line is maintained and operated on an ongoing basis, the park strives towards sustainability with the same level of care that went into the park's design. Plant watering The High Line's green roof system is designed to allow the plants to retain as much water as possible. A drip irrigation system is also installed with options for both automatic and manual watering. As many of the plants are drought-tolerant, they need little supplemental watering. When supplemental watering is needed, hand watering is used so as to tailor the amount of water to the needs of individual species and weather conditions, and to conserve water. | | | | | | X | | |
| | Sustainability The High Line is inherently a green structure. It repurposes a piece of industrial infrastructure as a public green space. The High Line landscape essentially functions as a green roof; porous pathways contain open joints, so water can drain between planks and water adjacent planting beds, cutting down on the amount of stormwater that runs off the site into the sewer system. | | х | | Х | х | Х | Х | |
| | Local sourcing Materials are sourced from within a 100-mile radius. Almost half of the High Line's plants are native species, and many were produced by local growers. The High Line's ecosystem provides food and shelter for a variety of wildlife species, including native pollinators. | | | | х | | Х | | Х |

Source: Author's own construction based on Cantor (2014) and David (2002:25)

The High Line represent different elements, principles and considerations to be included within open space to ensure regularity for a successful Third Place. With variety of activities included, opportunity for social interaction and Third Place layout, the social sustainability is enhanced through an improved quality of life concerning urban liveability (quality living space), social equality and stability.

5.2.3.3 Visual illustrations of Third Place planning in the High Line

The following images illustrate the High Line as situated in New York City. This unique Third Place utilised unused open space and incorporated different planning elements with a focused green approach to encourage users to spend time within. Opportunity for social interaction is provided on more than one level through the different services and attractions provided, seating options within the Third Places and location of the continuous greenway.











Figure 5-7: The High Line illustration of Third Place planning

Source: High Line (2017)

5.2.3.4 Case study review for best practices in the High Line

Following the introduction and the broader planning approaches, the specific case study identified (The High Line) is evaluated accordingly. The review was based on the theory-based framework developed in the literature investigation of this research (cross-reference to Section 3.5).

Table 5-6: Case 3 review and best practice identification

| The High Line review | | | | | | | | | |
|---|--|---|--|---|--|--|--|--|--|
| Planning approach design considerations and interpretation in terms of Third Place objectives | Planning guidelines | Third Place planning considerations to enhance social sustainability | Indicators motivating case study | Best practice identification (Case study specific) | | | | | |
| Social inclusivity Creation of a platform for community cohesion and social inclusion by improving the ability and opportunity on which individuals and groups take part in society. The fostering of social activities on neutral ground. | place attraction through synergy sense of place welcoming space with diverse uses and users sustainable approach community priority | Creation of a platform for community cohesion and social inclusion Public place on neutral ground where individuals and communities wish to gather and interact outside of the work or home realm Creation and maintenance of the conditions under which humans and nature can exist in productive harmony within urban areas | Social cohesion is achieved through the interactional platform for users. Benches and different chair setups also aid in the sense of place and movement dimension within the Third Place. The space is self-sustained in terms of green urbanism and green infrastructure incorporated, according to seasonal specifications. | | | | | | |
| Multi-functionality Active space enhancing characteristic uniqueness, through providing a variety (10+) of activities and amenities to focus on the enhancement of the human experience for each individual within the Third Place. | user-need diversity social and functional diversity combined services and activities (10+) | (cross-reference to Section 2.2, Section 2.5 and Section 2.7) Organising and offering activities to foster active social interaction Focus on the human experience within the Third Place Big or small natural areas varied in quality (cross-reference to Section 2.7.1, Section 3.2.2 and Section 3.4) | The space ensures regularity due to its uniqueness with a vibrant atmosphere. The human experience is enhanced with a variety of amenities, attractions and activities. Activities and city view differ from day- and night ensuring diversity is catered for in terms of the different user group needs. The Third Place is multi-functional due to its layout, serving different purposes and activities. | *Diversity within the Third Place to provide to different user groups | | | | | |
| Accessibility Internal and external place connectedness encouraging convenient pedestrian movement flow. | - entrance and exit to and from space - safety perception - walkability - utilise shared space through mixed-use - reinforce linkages | Enhance the number of visitors that frequently visit the Third Place, due to convenience encouraging regularity Planning on different scales enforcing an integrated planning approach and maximising the opportunities provided (cross-reference to Section 2.7.1 and Section 3.2.1) | Due to the unique form of the space, multiple entrances and exits are provided. Well defined enclosure is visible due to the space being elevated above street level, pedestrianorientated approach. The space ensures integrated connectivity towards the surrounding urban are due to the layout and form. | | | | | | |

| Perceptibility The display of social niceties to enhance the overall character (sense of place) through smart and adaptation designs. | public furniture and facilities availability aesthetic values and attractiveness flexibility for users scale diversity | Display of social niceties and contributes to public places where regular, voluntary gatherings of individuals occur Representation of a personal experience (cross-reference to Section 2.7 and Section 2.7.1) | Parking is limited due to the form and location, but a holistic and clean space is created with a welcoming atmosphere ensuring the space is comfortable for the users due to the layout. Multi-functionality is ensured through the incorporation of nature within the space, combining user activities according to the user needs. Visually the Third Place is attractive due to its location, elevated above the pedestrian eye level and green initiatives incorporated. | *Aesthetic value enhances sense of place through the unique layout |
|---|---|---|---|--|
| Marketability The attractiveness, practicality and usefulness for voluntary gatherings to occur through the establishment of user need attraction for regularity. | - quality of space enhancing a unique selling point | Diverse user-need attraction inviting lingering and regularity (cross-reference to Section 2.7.1) | The quality of the space is highlighted by the uniqueness in terms of the motivation for the development of the high line, aiding to the location. | *Sustainable maintenance approach and practices |
| Environmental sensitivity Enhancement of a sustainable green design for current and future use, relating to natural environmental diversity. | - sustainable practice approach - green initiatives | Create, enhance and restore ecological, biodiversity and ecosystem conservation and substitute grey infrastructure in urban areas (cross-reference to Section 2.7.2, Table 2.4) | Sustainable practices are incorporated to transform a lost space into a Third Place, substituting grey infrastructure and design within the boundaries of the natural environment of the Third Place. | *Strong environmental concerns with a native green approach (inherently a green structure) *Local sourcing of materials |
| Adaptability Compact layout design in context through incorporating multi-scale interconnected systems for the Third Place to be modified. | context consideration, design in context experimental design day- and night usage | Physical design encouraging compact design for social interaction encouragement Incorporating a smart and embracing design, where space embraces nature (cross-reference to Section 2.7 and Section 3.4) | The Third Place is designed according to the context ensuring compatibility as the Third Place stretches over different areas of the city. The space is highly adaptive to seasonal changes due to the layout. However, regularity can reduce during winter season. | *Encourage re-design (transformation), rather than new design |
| Intrinsic connectivity Mental and emotional sense of well-being based on person-process-place attachment. | - sense of authenticity - sense of place | Person-process-place concept enhancing place attachment (cross-reference to Section 2.6) | Sense of place is created through the welcoming atmosphere and connectedness to nature (green initiatives). | |

5.2.4 Case 4: The case of Noriega Street Parklet, San Francisco, California

5.2.4.1 Location overview

Street parklets, also revered to as pop-up parklets, have become a popular movement of urban planning and design to create public places in urban areas around the world. The parklets exist within small and underutilised public space and are based on a low-cost conversion to reclaim public space for public use (Loukaitou-Sideris *et al.*, 2012:5). The creation of these parklets, are driven by a push to reclaim car-designated zones in urban areas for pedestrian use. A parklet is defined as "a removable platform made available to the public for recreational use that occupies a portion of a parking lane that is closed to motor vehicle parking" (Departments of Planning and Development Review, Public Works and Public Utilities, 2016)

The Noriega parklet was designed as a meeting spot by the community for sitting, eating, and playing. Replacing three parking spaces on a street in San Francisco, California, the site consists of a 45° parallelogram and is subdivided into two separate spaces to help accommodate different user groups (dogs and children, young and old, quiet and loud, bikes and strollers). The one part of the space opens generously to the sidewalk, while the other is more protected and intimate. The required setback from adjacent parking spaces is exploited to provide seating on both the interior and exterior of the extra-deep benches, while the acute corners are embraced as areas for planting and chaise lounge seating. Although these parklets provide for public places, insufficient parking spaces has now become a great concern where parklets have been implemented.

The parklet, situated in the city's Outer Sunset District, was a community participation process, designed pro bono, constructed at cost and completed in 2012.

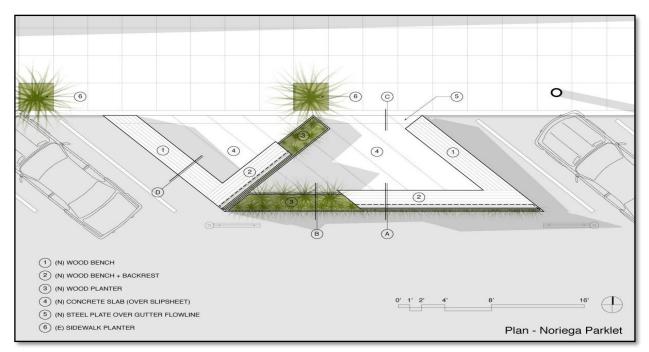


Figure 5-8: Layout of Noriega Street Parklet

Source: Contemporist (2012)

5.2.4.2 Planning principles employed in Noriega Street Parklet

Departments of Planning and Development Review, Public Works and Public Utilities (2016) and Loukaitou-Sideris *et al.* (2012:5) refer to the following qualifications, processes and specific design elements to consider for a successful parklet. Table 5-7 illustrates the planning principles included in the implementation of the parklet in terms of the qualifications for the parklet, the process and the specific considered design elements.

Table 5-7: Success factors of Noriega Street Parklet

| FACTOR / INITIATIVE | DESCRIPTION | Social inclusivity | Multi- | functionality | Accessibility | Perceptibility | Marketability | Environmental sensitivity | Adaptability | Intrinsic |
|-----------------------------|---|-----------------------|--------|---------------|---------------|----------------|---------------|---------------------------|--------------|-----------|
| Qualifications | Parklet application is required for a permit for pedestrian enhancement, demonstrating the following based on the Parklet Design Guidelines: Safe and appropriate parklet location and construction Appropriate location demonstrated via photographs and drawings of proposed locations, while safe construction is demonstrated by stamped engineering drawings for loading requirements. Both location and construction should meet the Parklet Design Guidelines. | | | | Х | | Х | Х | х | Х |
| | Community support Letters of support from adjacent property owners, as well as petitions of support from neighbours and other involved groups. | х | | | | х | х | | | х |
| | Appropriately maintenance strategy The maintenance of the parklet includes, but is not limited to, cleaning the parklet and the immediate environment affected by it, storing the parklet in the case of temporary or seasonal removal, and maintaining insurance. | | Х | | | | | | х | |
| Parklet process | The design phase, where parklets should be installed and developed include considering which streets and location in the street. Considerations for the parklet development include entrances, width and height, loading, installation, signage and additional safety measures. The application phase includes location identification, application submission, location review, finalise community support and input, design review, final approvals and installation. | | | | Х | X | X | | | |
| Design elements to consider | Lighting, seating options, shading, topography-influenced design | Х | Х | | | | | х | Х | х |

Source: Author's own construction based on Departments of Planning and Development Review, Public Works and Public Utilities (2016); Loukaitou-Sideris et al. (2012:5)

Although Noriega Street parklet is developed on a smaller scale, this Third Place exemplifies opportunities found within lighter, quicker and cheaper approaches to be considered for Third Place planning within urban areas. Social sustainability is further enhanced through beautification, encouraging a sense of community and place, improving neighbourhood relations to encourage community cohesion, and increasing both real and perceived security and safety through encouraging pedestrian-friendly areas.

5.2.4.3 Illustrations of Third Place planning in Noriega Street

The following images illustrate The Noriega Street Parklet from a street view. Although this Third Place is provided on a smaller scale and includes green urbanism approaches, the uniqueness of the mobile Third Place invites users to interact and utilise the area. The location in which these Third Places are provided is the key to success, providing a seating option for users.







Figure 5-9: Noriega Street Parklet visual illustrations of Third Place planning

Source: Contemporist (2012)

5.2.4.4 Case study review for best practices in Noriega Street Parklet

Following the introduction and the broader planning approaches, the specific case study identified (Noriega Street Parklet) is evaluated accordingly. The review was based on the theory-based framework developed in the literature investigation of this research (cross-reference to Section 3.5).

Table 5-8: Case 4 review and best practice identification

| | Noriega Street Parklet review | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Planning approach design considerations and interpretation in terms of Third Place objectives | Planning guidelines | Third Place planning considerations to enhance social sustainability | Indicators motivating case study | Best practice identification (Case study specific) | | | | | | | |
| Social inclusivity Creation of a platform for community cohesion and social inclusion by improving the ability and opportunity on which individuals and groups take part in society. The fostering of social activities on neutral ground. | place attraction through synergy sense of place welcoming space with diverse uses and users sustainable approach community priority | Creation of a platform for community cohesion and social inclusion Public place on neutral ground where individuals and communities wish to gather and interact outside of the work or home realm Creation and maintenance of the conditions under which humans and nature can exist in productive harmony within urban areas (cross-reference to Section 2.2, Section 2.5 and | The size of the space creates an interactional platform for social cohesion and a sense of place. Due to the layout of the Third Place social interaction is encourages. The space can be self-sustained, but due to the size, minimal green initiatives can be incorporated on a small scale. | | | | | | | | |
| Multi-functionality Active space enhancing characteristic uniqueness, through providing a variety (10+) of activities and amenities to focus on the enhancement of the human experience for each individual within the Third Place. | user-need diversity social and functional diversity combined services and activities (10+) | Section 2.7) Organising and offering activities to foster active social interaction Focus on the human experience within the Third Place Big or small natural areas varied in quality (cross-reference to Section 2.7.1, Section 3.2.2 and Section 3.4) | Regularity is ensured due to the structure being moveable, different users at different locations. The space is compatible for day- and night use and in different locations. Green usage and initiatives can be changed due to the design. The size allows for multifunctionality within different locations. | | | | | | | | |
| Accessibility Internal and external place connectedness encouraging convenient pedestrian movement flow. | - entrance and exit to and from space - safety perception - walkability - utilise shared space through mixed-use - reinforce linkages | Enhance the number of visitors that frequently visit the Third Place, due to convenience encouraging regularity Planning on different scales enforcing an integrated planning approach and maximising the opportunities provided (cross-reference to Section 2.7.1 and Section 3.2.1) | The structure creating the space is moveable, convenient in terms of location. Well defined enclosure is provided, placed on street level, providing for diverse user groups. Integrated with sidewalks and current street level systems. | *Encourage public spaces for pedestrian use within urban areas (pedestrian enhancement & car free zones) | | | | | | | |

| Perceptibility The display of social niceties to enhance the overall character (sense of place) through smart and adaptation designs. | public furniture and facilities availability aesthetic values and attractiveness flexibility for users scale diversity | places where regular, voluntary gatherings of individuals occur Representation of a personal experience | The space provides a clean and comfortable image with creativeness included in the space. The Third Place is appealing due to its layout and innovation in design to ensure a personal experience. | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Marketability The attractiveness, practicality and usefulness for voluntary gatherings to occur through the establishment of user need attraction for regularity. | - quality of space enhancing a unique selling point | regularity | The uniqueness of the space is focused on the lighter, quicker & cheaper approach of a moveable structure creating a Third Place. | *Cost effective approach |
| Environmental sensitivity Enhancement of a sustainable green design for current and future use, relating to natural environmental diversity. | - sustainable practice approach - green initiatives | and ecosystem conservation and substitute grey | Third Place is designed according to sustainable practices including green initiatives. | |
| Adaptability Compact layout design in context through incorporating multi-scale interconnected systems for the Third Place to be modified. | context consideration, design in contextexperimental designday- and night usage | social interaction encouragement Incorporating a smart and embracing design, where space embraces nature (cross-reference to Section 2.7 and Section 3.4) | The Third Place is moveable ensuring compatibility with its surroundings and is implemented according to context considerations. Flexible in terms of layout and location for seasonal changes. | *Transforming underutilised space to public place (reclaim of urban space) *Temporary structure removal options for variety |
| Intrinsic connectivity Mental and emotional sense of well-being based on person-process-place attachment. | - sense of authenticity - sense of place | attachment | Sense of authenticity is provided through the uniqueness of the place created within what was unused space. | |

5.2.5 Case 5: The case of Perth Cultural Centre, Perth, Western Australia

5.2.5.1 Location overview

The Perth Cultural Centre (PCC) is strategically positioned between the Perth CBD and vibrant Northbridge and is home to key cultural institutions and public gathering spaces. Surrounded by attractions such as the Art Gallery of Western Australia, Western Australia Museum, State Library of Western Australia, State Theatre, and the Perth Institute of Contemporary Arts (PICA), the PCC provides a unique public space as Third Place for the people within this precinct. The PCC precinct is earmarked for continued development and enhancement as the principal focus of cultural activities (City of Perth Planning Scheme, 2015).

5.2.5.2 Planning principles employed in Perth Cultural Centre

While the PCC is home to many of the state's major cultural and educational institutions, a lack of management and maintenance has left the precinct underutilised, with a poor public perception. For this reason, the PCC was not functioning at full capacity. The East Perth Redevelopment Authority (EPRA), along with Project for Public Space (PPS) and local community and institutions, collaborated to revamp the district and provide a valued place for a corresponding public place experience for the people. The aim was for a continuous, safe, attractive and clearly identified network of pedestrian paths, spaces and facilities to be provided and enhanced throughout the precinct, ensuring pedestrian considerations remain a high priority.

Place-making principles were applied, considering the people, the community and the area's assets and personality, to create vibrant and active public place for Western Australia as illustrated in Table 5-9.

Table 5-9: Success factors of Perth Cultural Centre

| FACTOR / INITIATIVE | DESCRIPTION | Social | inclusivity | Multi- | functionality | Accessibility | Perceptibility | Marketability | Environmental sensitivity | Adaptability | Intrinsic |
|------------------------|---|--------|-------------|--------|---------------|---------------|----------------|---------------|---------------------------|--------------|-----------|
| Mix of spaces | The precinct's physical interface with the city and its | | | | | | | | | | |
| and uses | relationship between buildings and open spaces must be | | | | | | | | | | |
| | seamless. Introducing a new mix of uses and commercial | | | | | Х | | X | | Х | |
| | activity to add vibrancy, supported by sympathetic | | | | | ^ | | ^ | | ^ | |
| | programming and activation strategies, will aid in ensuring a | | | | | | | | | | |
| | mix of uses and users. | | | | | | | | | | |
| Pedestrian- | The planning patterns, movement and public realm is | | | | | | | | | | |
| orientated | designed to enhance pedestrian movement and ensure a | Х | < | | | | Χ | | | | X |
| | vibrant people-focused destination. | | | | | | | | | | |
| PPS lighter, | The approach ensured a range of immediate | | | | | | | | | | |
| quicker, cheaper | improvements including seating, shade, lighting, retail | | | X | (| | | | Х | | |
| approach | pods, urban orchard and native wetland. | | | | | | | | | | |

Source: Author's own construction based on City of Perth Planning Scheme (2015)

The public place integrated with the PCC provides opportunities for social engagement and lingering through the layout and activities provided for different user groups. Social sustainability is enhanced through setting a stage for youth and adults to associate with one another, improving neighbourhood relations to encourage community cohesion, increasing both real and perceived security and safety through encouraging pedestrian-friendly areas, and improving quality of life concerning urban liveability and quality living space, social equality and stability provided.

5.2.5.3 Illustrations of Third Place planning in Perth Cultural Centre

The following images illustrate PCC as a Third Place from both a bird's view and street view. Provided on a larger scale, the place introduces opportunity for social interaction as different activities and amenities are incorporated. Usage of the place for day and night or for different purposes is also encouraged and ensures regularity of a variety of different user groups. Different textures, colours, seating arrangements and lighting are incorporated for a safe and inviting atmosphere and a pedestrian-friendly zone.

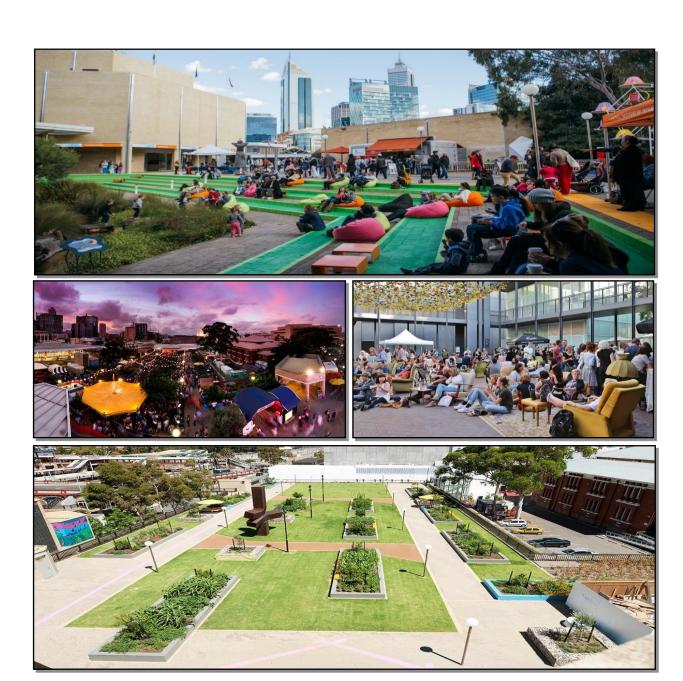


Figure 5-10: Perth Cultural Centre illustrations of Third Place planning

Source: City of Perth Planning Scheme (2015:2)

5.2.5.4 Case study review for best practices in Perth Cultural Centre

Following the introduction and the broader planning approaches, the specific case study identified (Perth Cultural Centre) is evaluated accordingly. The review was based on the theory-based framework developed in the literature investigation of this research (cross-reference to Section 3.5).

 Table 5-10:
 Case 5 review and best practice identification

| Perth Cultural Centre review | | | | | | | | |
|--|---|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|
| Planning approach design considerations and interpretation in terms of Third Place objectives | Planning guidelines | Third Place planning considerations to enhance social sustainability | Indicators motivating case study | Best practice identification (Case study specific) | | | | |
| Social inclusivity Creation of a platform for community cohesion and social inclusion by improving the ability and opportunity on which individuals and groups take part in society. The fostering of social activities on neutral ground. | place attraction through synergy sense of place welcoming space with diverse uses and users sustainable approach community priority | Creation of a platform for community cohesion and social inclusion Public place on neutral ground where individuals and communities wish to gather and interact outside of the work or home realm Creation and maintenance of the conditions under which humans and nature can exist in productive harmony within urban areas (cross-reference to Section 2.2, Section 2.5 and Section 2.7) | The space is cooperative in terms of the surrounding facilities and sets a social interactive platform through the facilities with the space. Green initiative incorporation through green infrastructure in a self-sustained approach. | *Social engagement | | | | |
| Multi-functionality Active space enhancing characteristic uniqueness, through providing a variety (10+) of activities and amenities to focus on the enhancement of the human experience for each individual within the Third Place. | user-need diversitysocial and functional diversitycombined services and activities (10+) | Organising and offering activities to foster active social interaction Focus on the human experience within the Third Place Big or small natural areas varied in quality (cross-reference to Section 2.7.1, Section 3.2.2 and Section 3.4) | The diversity in activities ensure regularity of diverse user groups. The human experience is enhanced with a variety of amenities, attractions and activities. With the variety in activities and amenities provided for different user groups and specific needs, the Third Place is multi-functional. | *For day- and night use – lighting | | | | |
| Accessibility Internal and external place connectedness encouraging convenient pedestrian movement flow. | entrance and exit to and from space safety perception walkability utilise shared space through mixeduse reinforce linkages | Enhance the number of visitors that frequently visit the Third Place, due to convenience encouraging regularity Planning on different scales enforcing an integrated planning approach and maximising the opportunities provided (cross-reference to Section 2.7.1 and Section 3.2.1) | Conveniently located to offer more than one entrance and exit to the space. The planning patterns, movement and public realm are designed to enhance pedestrian movement and ensure a vibrant people focused destination. Different levels are incorporated in the space but integrated to ensure connectivity. | | | | | |

| Perceptibility The display of social niceties to enhance the overall character (sense of place) through smart and adaptation designs. | public furniture and facilities availability aesthetic values and attractiveness flexibility for users scale diversity | Display of social niceties and contributes to public places where regular, voluntary gatherings of individuals occur Representation of a personal experience (cross-reference to Section 2.7 and Section 2.7.1) Diverse services, activities and facilities for multi-functionality. Visually the Third Place is appealing due to the design, layout and innovation in design. | *Increasing both real and perceived security and safety through pedestrian-friendly areas |
|---|--|---|--|
| Marketability The attractiveness, practicality and usefulness for voluntary gatherings to occur through the establishment of user need attraction for regularity. | - quality of space enhancing a unique selling point | Diverse user-need attraction inviting lingering and regularity (cross-reference to Section 2.7.1) The location, integrating the space with surrounding activities, contribution to quality and regularity. | *Lighter, quicker and cheaper approach |
| Environmental sensitivity Enhancement of a sustainable green design for current and future use, relating to natural environmental diversity. | - sustainable practice approach - green initiatives | Create, enhance and restore ecological, biodiversity and ecosystem conservation and substitute grey infrastructure in urban areas (cross-reference to Section 2.7.2, Table 2.4) Grey infrastructure substitution through green initiatives incorporated in the Third Place. | |
| Adaptability Compact layout design in context through incorporating multi-scale interconnected systems for the Third Place to be modified. | context consideration, design in context experimental design day- and night usage | Physical design encouraging compact design for social interaction encouragement surrounding amenities. Incorporating a smart and embracing design, where space embraces nature space embraces nature (cross-reference to Section 2.7 and Section 3.4) The Third Place is compatible with its surrounding amenities. Flexibility is ensured through the layout with a range of immediate improvements through a lighter & quicker approach. | * Seamless physical interface with the city and its relationship between buildings and open spaces |
| Intrinsic connectivity Mental and emotional sense of well-being based on person-process-place attachment. | - sense of authenticity - sense of place | Person-process-place concept enhancing place attachment of place. (cross-reference to Section 2.6) The welcoming atmosphere ensures a sense of place. | *Urban liveability and quality living space |

5.2.6 Collective case study review and interpretation

Following the discussions, illustrations and reviews based on the five identified case studies, Table 5-11 illustrated a collective case study review and interpretation. The aforementioned literature-based design considerations are portrayed once more, and the best practices of each case study are identified. Although most of the best practices can be categorised with the current literature-based design considerations, single elements were identified to refine the framework for planning Third Places. This review and interpretation will aid in the refining of the theory-based framework for the South African context.

Table 5-11: Collective case study review and interpretation

Collective case study review and interpretation

| Design consideration regarding literature | Case 1: Las Ramblas Boulevard | Case 2: Bryant Park | Case 3: High Line | Case 4: Noriega Street Parklet | Case 5: Perth Cultural Centre |
|---|--|--|---|--|---|
| Social inclusivity 1,2 | | *The place should complement the cultural preference of the surrounding community | | | *Social engagement |
| Multi-functionality ^{1,3} | *Mixed uses and users impact regularity | *Variety for day- and night use and seasonal changes in terms of amenities and services/ activities provided to ensure all year-round regularity of users in the space | *Diversity within the Third Place to provide to different user groups | | *For day- and night use – lighting |
| Accessibility 1,2,3 | | *Increase visibility by increasing entrances | | *Encourage public spaces for pedestrian use within urban areas (pedestrian enhancement & car free zones) | |
| Perceptibility 1,2 | | | *Aesthetic value enhances sense of place through the unique layout | | *Increasing both real and perceived security and safety through pedestrian-friendly areas |
| Marketability ² | *Reclaim urban space for public use | *Engaging activities for the people at no cost | *Sustainable maintenance approach and practices | *Cost effective approach | *Lighter, quicker and cheaper approach |
| Environmental sensitivity ² | *Respect historical growth of public areas | | *Strong environmental concerns with a native green approach (inherently a green structure) *Local sourcing of materials | | |
| Adaptability ^{2,3} | *Focus on redevelopment rather than new development *The urban environment should remain fairly compact to impact sustainability | *Incorporate activities in stages, cost effective | *Encourage re-design (transformation), rather than new design | *Transforming underutilised space to public place (reclaim of urban space) *Temporary structure removal options for variety | * Seamless physical interface with the city and its relationship between buildings and open spaces |
| Intrinsic connectivity ² | *Variety uses ensures an individual experience for all | | | | *Urban liveability and quality living space |

¹ Placemaking ² Lively planning ³ Green urbanism

5.3 Phase 2: Expert-survey

The literature investigation of this research has identified and elaborated on the importance and benefits of Third Place planning and the challenges South Africa face in this regard. In accordance with the case study review and best practice identification (cross-reference to Section 5.2), Chapter 5 further reflected on expert perspectives regarding the importance of planning Third Places in South Africa. The detailed methodological approach of Phase 2 of the empirical investigation was described in Chapter 1 (cross-reference to Section 1.5.2).

The results from the expert perspective are presented accordingly, based on the structured questionnaire. A e-questionnaire was sent to 162 candidates and a total of 30 participants (n=30) completed a valid questionnaire. 86,7% of these participants indicated the private sector as their main sector of employment, with the remaining 13,3% indicating the public sector as their main sector of employment.

Profession was a core dominator for selecting participants, as expert opinions on the subject matter was required. 50% of the participants included in the research are Professional Town Planners; 30% Candidate Planners; 6,7% researchers in the field of Urban and Regional Planning; with the remaining 13,3% participants indicating their profession as market analysts.

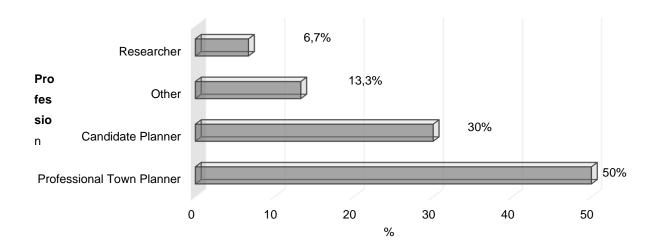


Figure 5-11: Profession of survey participants

Figure 5-12 illustrates the highest level of planning education of the participants. 53,3% indicated an honours degree as their highest level of planning education, correlating with the SACPLAN requirements of a registered Professional Planner (SACPLAN, 2018).

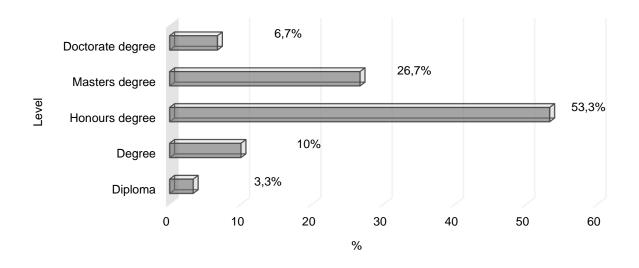


Figure 5-12: Survey participants' highest level of planning education

Within the sample size of the 30 participants, 73,3% indicated that their knowledge on Third Places and the planning thereof was based on a local perspective.

5.3.1 Expert-survey results

The results of the expert-survey are reported thematically according to:

- 1) importance of Third Places within spatial planning,
- 2) improvement of social sustainability through Third Places,
- 3) creating a sense of place and community through Third Places and
- 4) the importance of public participation in Third Place planning.

The data of the questionnaire-based expert-survey was statistically analysed by the Statistical Consultation Services of the North-West University, where frequencies and cross-tabulations were used to determine the association between two variables. The results were interpreted to inform on the planning of Third Places within the local South African context, the specific needs and preferences identified by the experts, along with specific characteristics to inform the planning of Third Places within a local context.

With specific reference to the needs and preferences relating to Third Places, 60% of the expert perspectives indicated the importance for Third Places to provide users with a place for interactional opportunities. Furthermore 56,7% indicated the importance of a place space for children to be incorporated within the Third Place (refer to Table 5-12 and Table 5-13).

Table 5-12: Needs and preferences in the Third Place

| Needs and preferences in the Third Place | Not important at all | Slightly important | Moderately important | Very important | Extremely important |
|---|----------------------|--------------------|----------------------|----------------|---------------------|
| Provides users a | place to |): | | | |
| Interact with people/friends/family | | | 3,3% | 60% | 36,7% |
| Work out/keep fit (e.g. gym, run, walk) | | 6,7% | 40% | 36,7% | 16,7% |
| Relax | | 6,7% | 26,7% | 36,7% | 30% |
| Enjoy lunch | 6,7% | 3,3% | 33,3% | 36,7% | 20% |
| Play for children | | 3,3% | 10% | 56,7% | 30% |
| Walk pets | | 10% | 36,7% | 43,3% | 10% |
| Enjoy/interact with nature (green) | | | 16,7% | 43,3% | 40% |
| Spend a day (e.g. picnic) | | 13,3% | 23,3% | 43,3% | 20% |
| Engage in other activities (e.g. public art, games) | | 10 | 30% | 43,3% | 16,7% |

A total of 86,7% participants indicated safety as extremely important with reference to the characteristic of Third Places, 66,7% indicated physical design as very important, 63,3% identified amenities within the Third Place as very important, and 66,7% indicated that it is very important for the Third Place to be personally functional to its users. With this high percentage indicating the importance of safety within Third Places, a direct correlation can be made in terms of the location, indicated as extremely important by 63,3%, and will consequently influence regularity within the Third Place.

 Table 5-13:
 Importance of the quality of characteristics in Third Places

| Characteristics | Not important at all | Slightly important | Moderately important | Very important | Extremely important |
|--|----------------------|--------------------|----------------------|----------------|---------------------|
| Location | | | 10% | 26,7% | 63,3% |
| Safety | | | | 13,3% | 86,7% |
| Physical design | | | 16,7% | 66,7% | 16,7% |
| Accessibility | | | 6,7% | 46,7% | 46,7% |
| Management | | | 10% | 36,7% | 53,3% |
| Amenities | | | 20% | 63,3% | 16,7% |
| Regularity | | 3,3% | 26,7% | 53,3% | 16,7% |
| Incorporated activities | | 6,7% | 40% | 36,7% | 16,7% |
| Representation of a personal experience | 3,3% | 3,3% | 40% | 46,7% | 6,7% |
| Fulfil an individual need | 3,3% | 6,7% | 53,3% | 23,3% | 13,3% |
| Makes one escape from home (First Place) and work (Second Place) | | 3,3% | 20% | 53,3% | 23,3% |
| Personally functional to people | | 3,3% | 20% | 66,7% | 10% |
| There when needed | 3,3% | 6,7% | 23,3% | 53,3% | 13,3% |

Cross-tabulations were further applied in order to examine relationships within the data that might not be readily apparent when analysing total survey responses. Cramer's V (symbolized by V: large effect or practical significant association $V \sim 0.5$; a medium effect or practical visible significant association $V \sim 0.3$; and a small effect or practical non-significant association $V \sim 0.1$). Ellis and Steyn (2013:52) determined the effect size and practical significance thereof. P-values are reported for the sake of completeness, but will not be interpreted, since a

convenience sample instead of a random sample is applied. The analysis considered the responses of participants with reference to the importance of planning Third Places impacting social sustainability within South Africa. Significant associations which illustrated a small, medium or large effect are captured in Table 5-14. The cross-tabulation results were according discussed thematically based on four initiatives including 1) the importance of Third Places within spatial planning; 2) the improvement of social sustainability through Third Places; 3) creating a sense of place and community through Third Places; and 4) the importance of public participation in Third Place planning.

Table 5-14: Cross-tabulations results of the expert-survey

| INITIATIVE | SUPPORT OF INITIATIVE | CHI-SQUARE TEST (P<0.05) | CRAMER'S V TEST VALUE | CRAMER'S V TEST APPROX. SIG. |
|--|-----------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Third Place importance within spatial planning | 53,3% | 0,905 | 0,190 | 0,905 |
| Improvement of social sustainability through Third Places | 66,7% | 0,283 | 0,348 | 0,283 |
| Third Places to create a sense of place/community | 77,8% | 0,141 | 0,401 | 0,141 |
| Importance of public participation in Third place planning | 72,8% | 0,211 | 0,322 | 0,211 |

These findings in Table 5-14 are discussed accordingly.

5.3.1.1.1 Third Place importance within spatial planning

The cross-tabulation illustrated a total of 53,3% of the participants, indicating their profession as Professional Town Planners, ranked the importance of Third Places within spatial planning as "very important". This is a direct indication of professionals within the public and private sector of South Africa recognising the importance of Third Place planning to be included and maximised

within broader spatial planning initiatives. A small effect or practical non-significant association was evident (V = 0.190). A total of 55,6% of the participants indicating their profession as Candidate Town Planners also ranked the importance of Third Places within spatial planning as "very important".

5.3.1.1.2 Improvement of social sustainability through Third Places

66,7% of the participants, indicating the extent of their familiarity regarding Third Places as "very familiar", agreed with the statement that introducing Third Places in urban areas would enhance social sustainability. A medium effect or practical visible significant association was evident (V = 0,348).

5.3.1.1.3 Third Places to create a sense of place and community

The cross-tabulation illustrated a total of 77,8% of the participants, indicating the extent of their familiarity regarding Third Places as "very familiar", ranked the importance of Third Places within communities in order to create a sense of place or sense of community as "extremely important". A large effect or practical significant association was evident (V = 0,401).

5.3.1.1.4 Importance of public participation in Third Place planning

36,4% of the participants, indicating that their knowledge in terms of Third Places as based on a "local perspective", indicated the importance of a bottom-up/public participation process in the planning of Third Places as "very important to extremely important". A medium effect or practical visible significant association was evident (V = 0,322).

5.3.2 Expert-survey review and interpretation

Following the discussions, illustrations and data analysed based on the expert perspectives, Table 5-15 captures the expert-survey review and interpretation, linking the expert-survey initiatives to the design considerations and constructing the South African consideration in context to each design consideration. This review and interpretation informed the refining of the theory-based framework for the planning of Third Places in the South African context.

Table 5-15: Expert-survey review and interpretation

Expert-survey review and interpretation

30 (n=30) purposefully selected participant perspectives based on the South African context

| DESIGN CONSIDERATIONS | EXPERT-SURVEY INITIATIVES | SOUTH AFRICAN CONSIDERATIONS | | | |
|---------------------------|---|--|--|--|--|
| Social inclusivity | Importance of public participation in Third Place planning Improvement of social sustainability through Third Places | Consider Third Place planning on neighbourhood scale to enhance a sense of place and community through providing a social stage and opportunity for interaction. | | | |
| Multi-functionality | Third Place importance within spatial planning | Optimal usage requires multi-functionality through providing variety of usage options (e.g. day- and night usage). | | | |
| Accessibility | | Optimal usage of Third Place enhancement through providing sufficient entrances to the Third Place. | | | |
| Perceptibility | Third Places to create a sense of place and community | The importance of Third Place planning could be included and maximised within spatial planning initiative. | | | |
| Marketability | Importance of public participation in Third Place planning Third Place importance within spatial planning | By introducing Third Places within urban areas of South Africa, social sustainability could be enhanced. | | | |
| Environmental sensitivity | Third Place importance within spatial planning | Sustainable and environmental sensitive approach through local material sourcing. | | | |
| Adaptability | | Consider reclaiming urban open space to be transformed to Third Places. | | | |
| Intrinsic connectivity | Importance of public participation in Third Place planning Third Places to create a sense of place and community | Consider public input or a bottom-up approach to ensure user needs and requirements are met and a unique human experience in the Third Place is provided. | | | |

Phase 2, the expert perspectives, confirmed the importance of sustainable development within the local context. However, undervaluation of social sustainability within spatial planning approaches exist. The expert perspectives contributed specific planning guidelines to be considered in the context of South African. The inclusion of Third Place planning within spatial planning initiatives, the consideration of Third Place planning on neighbourhood scale and a bottom-up approach were proposed, based on the expert-survey, to inform the revised framework for the planning of Third Places specifically for the local South African context.

5.4 Conclusion

The empirical investigation of this research comprised of two phases, with Phase 1 and Phase 2 respectively constituting a qualitative and a quantitative study. Phase 1, the case study review, consisted of five purposefully selected international case studies to identify and consider international best practices for the South African context. Phase 2, the expert-survey, included a questionnaire-based expert-survey on the importance of planning Third Places in South Africa and the interface thereof with social sustainability.

Based on the five international case studies reviewed (cross-reference to Section 5.2), a strong correlation was drawn between the design considerations of the three purposefully selected planning approaches put forward for the planning of Third Places (cross-reference to Section 3.5) and the planning principles employed in the context of each international case study. Each case study contributed towards identifying international best practices, to inform the refinement of the eight design considerations of the framework for enhanced social sustainability through the planning of Third Places (cross-reference to Table 5-11).

The expert perspectives contributed to the refined framework by proposing additional consideration for the planning of Third Places in South Africa. As Third Place planning is a new concept within the South African planning context, the need to increase education and awareness on Third Place planning was emphasised, based on the value and benefits provided by such spaces. The incorporation of a participatory planning approach was in addition a prominent approach to be considered when planning for Third Places within South Africa to ensure that the need of the user groups of these places are met and regularity is enhanced.

Following Phase 1 and Phase 2 of the empirical investigation, the following core findings were drawn. Phase 1 indicated that social sustainability is regarded as an important aspect within spatial planning. This is due to public parks, green spaces and communal areas enhancing the

social well-being of the people, impacting on broader objectives linked to social sustainability. Case studies identified the value of well-defined planning considerations and guidelines in aid of planning for successful public places and for increased flexibility while catering for different user groups within the social fabric. Phase 2 confirmed the importance of sustainable development within the local context, but undervaluation of social sustainability within spatial planning approaches. As Third Place planning is a new concept within the South African planning context, the need to increase education and awareness on Third Place planning was emphasised, based on the value and benefits provided by such spaces. The eight design considerations constructed in Chapter 3 (cross-reference to Table 3-8) were refined according to their specific planning guidelines. This refinement of the guidelines of each design consideration was informed by the best practices and expert perspective initiatives (cross-reference to Table 5-11 and Table 5-15).

Phase 1 and 2 of this empirical investigation were accordingly employed to inform and refine the framework for enhanced social sustainability through the planning of Third Place in South Africa, as presented and proposed in Chapter 6.

CHAPTER 6: CONCLUSIONS

6.1 Introduction

Previous chapters in this research emphasised the increasingly influential role of social sustainability within the urban context, and the contribution of planning for Third Places in this regard. Chapter 6 of this research reflected on the most significant conclusions drawn from the literature review, the policy and legislative framework evaluation and the empirical investigation, in line with the research objectives and main research question set out in Chapter 1 (cross-reference to Section 1.4).

6.2 Conclusions drawn with regard to research objectives

Based on the research objectives, the following conclusions were drawn:

6.2.1 Conclusion 1: The planning of Third Places can enhance social sustainability

Social sustainability has become increasingly influential in the urban planning context (Woodcraft *et al.*, 2011:9). However, limited research to guide urban planning approaches towards enhanced social sustainability exists, especially in the South African context.

From a spatial planning perspective, the connections between social sustainability and the opportunities provided by the physical environment are becoming more apparent as land-use management is set to guide urban growth to provide high-quality living environments. Due to the notion of Third Place planning interpretation in terms of the objectives of sustainable development (evident from Table 2-3), the planning of Third Places could be a valuable planning approach towards realising sustainability objectives in the spatial planning context and enhance social sustainability.

The notion of Third Places could be considered as facilitator to enhance social sustainability (cross-reference to Section 2.7), motivated in terms of the benefits related to these places (cross-reference to Section 2.7.2). The planning of Third Places can, in this sense, then enhance social sustainability if the interface between the concepts are identified and strengthened.

Table 6-1 illustrates the interface between the drivers of social sustainability as shown in Chapter 2 of this research, highlighting the direct and indirect benefits of Third Places (cross-reference to Section 2.7.2) and the characteristics of Third Places as compiled by Oldenburg (1999:20-42) (cross-reference to Section 2.7.1).

Table 6-1: Interface between the drivers of social sustainability and the characteristics of Third Places

| | | | (| CHARACTERISTICS OF TH | E THIRD PLACE CONCE | PT | | |
|-------------------------------|---|----------------------|----------------------------|---|---|---------------|---|---|
| | Neutral ground | Leveller | Conversation | Accessibility & accommodation | Regulars | Low profiles | Playful mood | Home away from home |
| | | | • | Aid in unifying | neighbourhoods | | | |
| | Social stage | | | Bring youth and | adults into association wit | h one another | | |
| | | | | Increased both real and perceived security and safety | Improve neighbourhood relations to encourage community cohesion | | | Pedestrian-friendly areas |
| ≧ | | | Provides for entertainment | | | | | |
| ERES OF SOCIAL SUSTAINABILITY | Foster social interaction, integration and civic pride through recreation | | Forming friendships | Important for retired people | Tourist attraction | | Encourage volunteerism | |
| | Early interaction for children enhances social skills and improve confidence levels | | - | velopment stages, health rell-being | | | Identifying future abilities and identities of children | |
| DRIV | Human health a | and well-being | Physical, mental & r | | | | | sychological well-being |
| | Improved qu | ality of life | | Urban liveability | | | | Quality space |
| | | | | | | | | Beautification: Sense of Community & Sense of Place |
| | Promoted social equ | uality and stability | | | | | | |

This interface is the point of departure to enhance social sustainability through the planning of Third Places

6.2.2 Conclusion 2: A compilation of socially orientated planning approaches can inform the planning of Third Places as point of departure.

No framework currently exists within broader spatial planning guidelines for enhanced social sustainability through the planning of Third Places. As a result, existing literature and socially orientated planning approaches could inform such framework. Although for the purpose of this research the focus was placed on three purposefully selected planning approaches supplementary planning approaches might exist which should be considered and could also contribute to the planning of Third Places.

Attempting to create a theory-based framework for the planning of Third Places, three purposefully selected planning approaches (place-making, lively planning and green urbanism) were considered in this research to identify key design elements to be included in the framework (cross-reference to Chapter 3).

A collective consideration of the three planning approaches informed the formulation of recoded design consideration for the South Africa context. As a result, these three planning approaches provide a focused approach to guide the planning of Third Places and was applied in the empirical investigation of this research to identify international best practices to inform the refined framework for the local South African framework.

Table 6-2 captures the theory-based framework for enhanced social sustainability through the planning of Third Places.

Table 6-2: Theory-based framework for enhanced social sustainability through the planning of Third Places

| Theory-based framework | | | | | | | | |
|--|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Design considerations interpreted in terms of Third Place objectives | Planning guidelines | Third Place planning considerations to enhance social sustainability | | | | | | |
| Social inclusivity Creation of a platform for community cohesion and social inclusion by improving the ability and opportunity on which individuals and groups take part in society. The fostering of social activities on neutral ground. Multi-functionality Active space enhancing characteristic uniqueness, through providing a variety (10+) of activities and amenities to focus on the enhancement of | place attraction through synergy sense of place welcoming space with diverse uses and users sustainable approach community priority user-need diversity social and functional diversity combined services and activities (10+) | Creation of a platform for community cohesion and social inclusion Public place on neutral ground where individuals and communities wish to gather and interact outside of the work or home realm Creation and maintenance of the conditions under which humans and nature can exist in productive harmony within urban areas Organising and offering activities to foster active social interaction Focus on the human experience within the Third Place Big or small natural areas varied in quality | | | | | | |
| Accessibility Internal and external place connectedness encouraging convenient pedestrian movement flow. | entrance and exit to and from space safety perception walkability utilise shared space through mixed-use reinforce linkages | Enhance the number of visitors that frequently visit the Third Place, due to convenience encouraging regularity Planning on different scales enforcing an integrated planning approach and maximising the opportunities provided | | | | | | |
| Perceptibility The display of social niceties to enhance the overall character (sense of place) through smart and adaptation designs. | public furniture and facilities availability aesthetic values and attractiveness flexibility for users scale diversity | Display of social niceties and contributes to public places where regular, voluntary gatherings of individuals occur Representation of a personal experience | | | | | | |
| Marketability The attractiveness, practicality and usefulness for voluntary gatherings to occur through the establishment of user need attraction for regularity. | - quality of space enhancing a unique selling point | Diverse user-need attraction inviting lingering and regularity | | | | | | |
| Environmental sensitivity Enhancement of a sustainable green design for current and future use, relating to natural environmental diversity. | - sustainable practice approach - green initiatives | Create, enhance and restore ecological, biodiversity and ecosystem conservation and substitute grey infrastructure in urban areas | | | | | | |
| Adaptability Compact layout design in context through incorporating multi-scale interconnected systems for the Third Place to be modified. Intrinsic connectivity Mental and emotional sense of well-being based on person-process-place attachment. | - context consideration, design in context - experimental design - day- and night usage - sense of authenticity - sense of place | Physical design encouraging compact design for social interaction encouragement Incorporating a smart and embracing design, where space embraces nature Person-process-place concept enhancing place attachment | | | | | | |

6.2.3 Conclusion 3: International best practices can be translated to the local context, in line with guiding policy and legislative frameworks

The need for planning Third Places within South Africa has been confirmed through capturing the direct and indirect benefits provided (cross-reference to Section 2.7.2). Although this need exists, urban areas in South Africa continue to face unique challenges and realities relating to social sustainability and public place planning (cross-reference to Section 4.2). As a result, the social dimension of sustainability is often neglected, in comparison to the economic and environmental dimensions, reflected in the lack of financial support towards social sustainability initiatives within broader spatial planning approaches (cross-reference to Section 4.2).

During the review of the five purposefully selected international case studies, a direct association was made between the design considerations of the three purposefully selected planning approaches put forward for the planning of Third Places (cross-reference to Section 3.5) and the planning principles employed in the context of each international case study. These best practices, including the proposal of a cultural approach, a maintenance strategy plan to ensure continued sustainability, reclaiming space to be transformed to place, sustainable local approaches, pedestrian-orientated approach and mixed-use incorporation, resulted in the compilation of supplementary planning guidelines, contributing to inform the revised framework specifically for the local South African context.

Limited case studies are document that suggest of the successful interface between social sustainability and the planning of Third Places. More such cases should be captured to broaden the literature base on enhancing social sustainability through the planning of Third Places.

Table 6-3 below, illustrates the considerations proposed for the refining of the framework for South Africa, based on the case study review and identification of best practices and the expert perspectives.

Table 6-3: Considerations for the refining of the framework for the South African context

| Phase 1: Best practice identification | Cultural approach (surrounding environment consideration) | Maintenance strategy for continued sustainability | From space to place (reclaiming unused space for transformation) | Sustainable local approach (local material sourcing) | Pedestrian-orientated approach increasing car free zones | Third Place variety usage (different user group regularity and financial security) |
|---|--|--|--|--|---|--|
| Phase 2: Expert perspectives | Consider Third Place planning on neighbourhood scale to enhance a sense of place and community Location Safety | To be included and maximised within spatial planning and initiative Management | Consider public input or a bottom-up approach to ensure user needs and requirements are met for regularity Relax in Enjoy a lunch break in Spend a day in (e.g. picnic) | - Enjoy/ interact with nature (green) | Play for children Walk pets Interact with people/ friends/ family Personally functional to people Representation of a personal experience | - Engage in other activities (e.g. public art, games) |

In line with guiding policy and legislative frameworks

Emphasis the planning of Third Places within broader spatial planning approaches within South African policy and legislative frameworks where scope for inclusion exists through realising the benefits provided regarding social sustainability.

6.2.4 Conclusion 4: Local perspectives can contribute to enhance social sustainability through the planning of Third Places within the South African context

South African viewpoints of participants included in the research, relating to enhanced social sustainability through the planning of Third Places, were also included (cross-reference to Section 5.3). Regarding the cross-tabulation of the data extracted from the expert-survey, 56,7% of the participants indicated the importance of Third Places within spatial planning as "very important", while 53,3% of the participants agreed that social sustainability will be enhanced through the planning of Third Places within urban areas. The importance of Third Places in creating a sense of place and community was confirmed, and the importance of public participation in Third Place planning was indicated as being of the utmost importance.

Although Third Place planning remains a fairly new concept within South African spatial planning approaches, the importance thereof has been confirmed by professional perspectives. The main concern is reflected as the dissimilarity found between the status quo on the importance of Third Places brought forward in applicable South African policy and legislative frameworks (cross-reference to Section 4.3) and the conclusions drawn from the expert opinions (cross-reference to Section 5.3.1). The importance and need for the facilitation of Third Places from an expert point of view, based on the South African context, is not reflected in current policy and legislative framework provision. It is therefore concluded that a gap exists between acknowledgement of the importance of enhancing social sustainability and specific development guidelines on how to achieve this. This research proposes to enhance social sustainability through adopting a framework for facilitating the planning of Third Places.

After applying the theory-based framework to each case study to review, specific international best practices were identified, and the formulation of supplementary design considerations were created. These supplementary design considerations, along with the expert perspectives considering the local South African context and applicable policy and legislative frameworks, contributed to considerations for the refining of the framework to enhance social sustainability through the planning of Third Places.

Table 6-3 captures these considerations regarding international best practices (refer to Consideration 3), expert perspectives and applicable policy and legislative frameworks.

6.2.5 Conclusion 5: Social sustainability can be enhanced through a refined framework facilitating the planning of Third Places in South Africa

It is confirmed that the awareness of social sustainability within broader spatial planning approaches is increasing. In South Africa this awareness is also on the forefront. However, the planning of Third Places is at large unfamiliar, and although the importance thereof was confirmed by local expert perspectives (cross-reference to Section 5.3), gaps were identified in the planning thereof. From the conclusions drawn in the previous chapters, it was evident that the link between Third Place planning and social sustainability has not been quantified from a South African perspective. Currently no framework exists within broader spatial planning approaches to enhance social sustainability through the planning of Third Places.

This research proposed a refined framework to enhance social sustainability through the planning of Third Places, departing from defining Third Places from a South African perspective as: "Any sustainable place created by its social surroundings, integrated in the urban area, focused on the social dimension for a personal experience on neutral ground for all. The Third Place fulfils an individual functional need, providing diverse activities and amenities for regularity".

Following the inclusion of the design considerations, the overlapping design considerations of the various planning approaches were identified and recoded to inform a refined framework for the South African context (cross-reference to Table 3-7).

Objectives were furthermore constructed for each recoded design consideration, conforming to Third Places. Planning guidelines were established and proposed to facilitate the planning of Third Places. The spatial link to enhance social sustainability was also drawn in the refined framework, emphasising the interphase with social sustainability drivers regarding Third Place planning in the South African context. Finally, the South African approach (context-based considerations) for the planning of Third Place, specifically in the South African context, were captured. These context-based considerations were formulated based on the international best practice identification and the local expert perspectives informing the refined framework (cross-reference to Table 6-3). The context-based considerations are associated with the recoded design considerations captured and is proposed specifically for the South African local urban context. Each context-based consideration included was elaborated on, in the context of South Africa, in Chapter 7.

Table 6-4 captures the refined framework compiled for the South African context to enhance social sustainability through the planning of Third Places.

Table 6-4: Refined framework for enhanced social sustainability through the planning of Third Places in South Africa

| The Third Place (context-based) | Interface with social sustainability drivers Ensuring sustainable communities through Third Places: Thee principles | Planning approach design considerations interpreted in terms of Third Place objectives | Planning guidelines: The South African approach (context-based considerations) | |
|---|--|--|---|---|
| | Maintaining scale and capacity Recognising the importance of scale and capacity regarding the | Social inclusivity Creation of a platform for community cohesion and social inclusion by improving the ability and opportunity on which individuals and groups take part in society. The fostering of social activities on neutral ground. Multi-functionality Active space enhancing characteristic uniqueness, through providing a variety (10+) of | Setting of a social stage - cultural approach (surrounding environment consideration) - create opportunity for interaction between strangers - consider neighbourhood scale Diversity for regularity - provision of a varied uses to ensure place attraction and experience for all individual users - implementation of user need diversity through provided activities | |
| Any sustainable place created | community. The provision of interactional platforms created through lively elements, where space is regained for public use. Placement of high value on quality of life Primary focus is placed on the user increasing the quality of life | activities and amenities to focus on the enhancement of the human experience for each individual within the Third Place. Accessibility Internal and external place connectedness encouraging convenient pedestrian movement flow. | - day- and night usage of Third Place - inclusion of innovation in design through creativity Pedestrian-orientated - entrance and exit enhancement - walkability (pedestrian-orientated approach increasing car free zones) - network linkages and proximity (linking the Third Place with its surrounding context) - streetscape enhancement for improved movement | |
| by its social surroundings, integrated in the urban area, focused on the social dimension for a personal experience on neutral ground | | interactional platforms created through lively elements, where space is regained for public use. Placement of high value on quality of life Primary focus is placed on the user, increasing the quality of life experienced within the | Perceptibility The display of social niceties to enhance the overall character (sense of place) through smart and adaptation designs. | Sense of place - public furniture - safety perceptions - utilise shared space through mixed-use - enclosure of elements through the layout |
| for all. The Third Place fulfils an individual functional need, providing diverse activities and amenities for regularity. | | | Marketability The attractiveness, practicality and usefulness for voluntary gatherings to occur through the establishment of user need attraction for regularity. | LQC strategy PPS, 2015) to enhance social sustainability - public participation methods - consider experimental approach (lighter, quicker, cheaper) - consistency for quality - quality of the Third Place to enhance a unique selling point |
| | | Environmental sensitivity Enhancement of a sustainable green design for current and future use, relating to natural environmental diversity. | Nature-based solutions - water efficiency - use of local materials and resources - community priority of green initiatives - post-implementation maintenance strategy for continued sustainability - social and functional diversity of greenery (human & nature) - plan within ecological limits for biodiversity enhancement | |
| | | Adaptability Compact layout design in context through incorporating multi-scale interconnected systems for the Third Place to be modified. | Transformation of existing open spaces to Third Places - from space to place (reclaiming unused space for transformation) - flexibility for change | |
| | | Intrinsic connectivity Mental and emotional sense of well-being based on person-process-place attachment. | Focused participatory planning - sense of authenticity to influence a personal experience through public participation approaches | |

Refined framework for the South African context

6.3 Conclusion

Although existing policy and legislative frameworks supports the notion of sustainable development in South Africa, insufficient support of public place planning exists (cross-reference to Table 4-3). In conjunction to this, specific implementation strategies of sustainable development are absent. As a result, the lack of practical application of existing planning theories has resulted in the widening of the theory-practice gap and alternative approaches should be considered to enhance social sustainability. Ultimately the focus should be shifted from planning for sustainable development to designing for social sustainability.

Conclusions regarding the notion of Third Place planning to enhance social sustainability was made in Chapter 6 of this research. However, the impact of Third Places within urban areas can only be comprehended through an enhanced understanding of these Third Places for the South African context, where social sustainability is emphasised within the notion of sustainable development. Within the local South African context, it was proposed to reclaim public space for public used to plan for Third Places by employing the refined framework compiled for the local South African context.

The conclusions elaborated on in this chapter addressed the objective set out in Chapter 1. The main research question (cross-reference to Section 1.4) included in this research of "How can the notion of Third Places contribute to enhance social sustainability, especially in the South African context?" was addressed through a detailed literature and empirical investigation. Chapter 6 concluded that Third Place planning could enhance social sustainability in South Africa, when the enforcement of the specific planning considerations and guidelines proposed in the refined framework are approached in accordance with the realities and challenges (cross-reference to Section 4.2) currently existing in the local South African context.

Finally, generalisations confirmed and new contributions made to planning knowledge on Third Place planning were elaborated on. Table 6-5 reflects the key generalisations confirmed, as well as new contributions made by this research as portrayed under each concluding objective.

Table 6-5: Key generalisations confirmed and new contributions made by this research

| CONFIRMATIONS | CONTRIBUTIONS | | | | | | |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Reflect on sustainable development, with the emphasis on so | cial sustainability and the linkages with the Third Place concept | | | | | | |
| Social sustainability getting insufficient recognition in comparison to economic and environmental | Contribution to the discourse on sustainable development, the importance of social sustainability and | | | | | | |
| sustainability. | the role of Third Places therein. | | | | | | |
| The link between Third Places and social sustainability (for South Africa) has not been quantified. | Considering urban space to host social sustainability. | | | | | | |
| Third Places and the planning thereof remains a fairly new concept within South Africa. | Identified interface for enhanced social sustainability through the planning of Third Places. | | | | | | |
| The benefits provided by Third Places should be quantified as motivation to plan for Third Places. | Increased recognition on Third Place planning within urban areas of South Africa by emphasising the | | | | | | |
| Sustainable development (direct and indirect benefits) can be enhanced through Third Places. | benefits provided. | | | | | | |
| Develop a theory-based framework for enhancing social sustainability through a qualitative enquiry into three purposefully selected planning approaches relating to the planning of Thir | | | | | | | |
| No focused approach is provided to facilitate Third Place planning in South Africa. | Compilation of a theory-based framework based on three main planning approaches. | | | | | | |
| Consider international case studies and identify best practices relating to the planning | Consider international case studies and identify best practices relating to the planning of Third Places, in an attempt to refine the proposed framework in line with guiding policy and | | | | | | |
| legisla | tive frameworks | | | | | | |
| Focus is placed on the provision of more pressing issues (housing) of a developing country (South | Capturing best practices relating to the planning of Third Places and comparing such to expert | | | | | | |
| Africa). | perspectives and local interpretation. | | | | | | |
| Sustainable development is emphasised in spatial context. | Identify applicable national policy and legislative frameworks supporting Third Place planning to | | | | | | |
| | identify opportunity for inclusion (cross-reference to Section 7.2.4). | | | | | | |
| Capture the local interpretation of planning for Third Places from a professional | perspective and to statistically interpret findings to inform the proposed framework | | | | | | |
| The lack concerning the planning of Third Pace in local context. | Capturing expert perspectives and local interpretation on the planning of Third Places to enhance | | | | | | |
| The need for sustainable community planning is highlighted. | social sustainability. | | | | | | |
| | Contribution to the literature on Third Places, especially from a local South African perspective, in line | | | | | | |
| | with guiding policy and legislative frameworks. | | | | | | |
| Recommend a framework to enhance social sustainability through the planning of Third F | Places, translating literature and empirical investigation findings to the South African context | | | | | | |
| Insufficient planning of Third Places to enhance social sustainability. | Creation of a framework to enhance social sustainability and the planning of Third Places for the | | | | | | |
| | South African context. | | | | | | |

Table 6-6 captures the overall research contribution in line with the respective research objectives.

Table 6-6: Research contribution in line with the respective research objectives

| RESEARCH OBJECTIVES | ADDRESSED IN | NEW KNOWLEDGE CONTRIBUTION (BASED ON RESEARCH FINDINGS) |
|---|-------------------------------|--|
| Reflect on sustainable development, with the | Section 6.2.1 | Contribution to the discourse relating to sustainable development, the importance of social sustainability and the role of Third |
| emphasis on social sustainability and the linkages | • Section 7.2.1 & 7.2.2 | Places as emphasis. |
| with the Third Place concept. | | Opportunity is provided for urban space to host social sustainability. |
| | | A link is provided for social sustainability to be enhanced through the notion of Third Places. |
| | | Increased recognition on Third Place planning within urban areas of South Africa through emphasising the benefits provided. |
| Develop a theory-based framework for enhanced | Section 6.2.2 | Compilation of a theory-based framework based on three main planning approaches. |
| social sustainability through a qualitative enquiry | | |
| into three purposefully selected planning | | |
| approaches relating to the planning of Third | | |
| Places. | | |
| Consider international case studies and identify | Section 6.2.3 | Capturing best practices relating to the planning of Third Places and comparing such to expert perspectives and local |
| best practices relating to the planning of Third | • Section 7.2.2, 7.2.3, 7.2.4 | interpretation. |
| Places, in an attempt to refine the proposed | | Identify applicable national policy and legislative frameworks supporting Third Place planning to identify opportunity for |
| framework in line with guiding policy and legislative | | inclusion (cross-reference to Section 7.2.4). |
| frameworks. | | |
| Capture the local interpretation of planning for | Section 6.2.4 | Capturing expert perspectives and local interpretation on the planning of Third Places to enhance social sustainability. |
| Third Places from a professional perspective and to | Section 7.2.5 | Contribution to the literature on Third Places, especially from a local South African perspective, in line with guiding policy and |
| statistically interpret findings to inform the proposed | | legislative frameworks. |
| framework. | | |
| Recommend a framework to enhance social | Section 6.2.5 | First to develop a focused framework facilitating Third Place planning to enhance social sustainability in South Africa. |
| sustainability through the planning of Third Places, | Section 7.2.5 | |
| translating literature and empirical investigation | | |
| findings to the South African context. | | |

CHAPTER 7: RECOMMENDATIONS TO ENHANCE SOCIAL SUSTAINABILITY THROUGH THIRD PLACE PLANNING

7.1 Introduction

Based on the conclusions drawn in Chapter 6, substantiated by the literature investigation, theory-based sampling framework, policy and legislative framework evaluation, and empirical investigation, Chapter 7 aimed to propose specific planning recommendations to enhance social sustainability within the local South African context through the planning of Third Places. Chapter 7 also elaborated on opportunities for future research. Figure 7-1 illustrates the chapter structure.

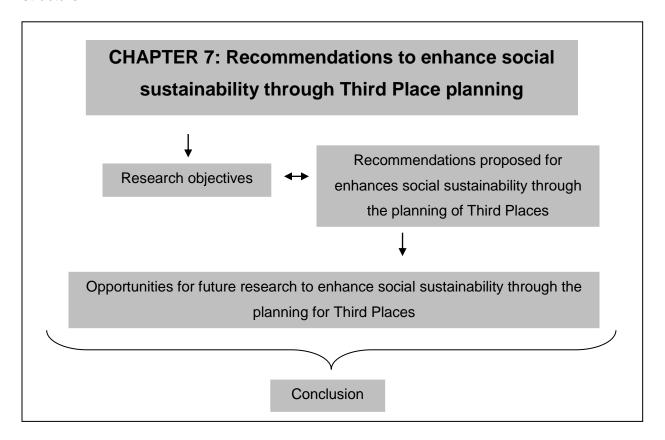


Figure 7-1: Chapter 7 structure

7.2 Planning recommendations

Table 7-1 illustrates the recommendations proposed with regards to each objective put forward in Chapter 1 of this research. The proposed recommendations in Table 7-1 were elaborated on accordingly.

Table 7-1: Planning recommendations derived from this research

| OBJECTIVE | RECOMMENDATION PROPOSED |
|---|---|
| Reflect on sustainable development, with the | Planning recommendation 1: Enhance |
| emphasis on social sustainability and the | social sustainability within sustainable |
| linkages with the Third Place concept. | development approaches. |
| Develop a theory-based framework for | Planning recommendation 2: Emphasise |
| enhancing social sustainability through a | the planning of Third Places within broader |
| qualitative enquiry into three purposefully | spatial planning approaches. |
| selected planning approaches relating to the | |
| planning of Third Places. | |
| Consider international case studies and | Planning recommendation 3: Transform |
| identify best practices relating to the planning | current urban spaces to Third Places to |
| of Third Places, in an attempt to refine the | enhance broader social sustainability |
| proposed framework in line with guiding | objectives. |
| policy and legislative frameworks. | |
| Capture the local interpretation of planning for | Planning recommendation 4: Enhance |
| Third Places from a professional perspective | social sustainability within policy and |
| and to statistically interpret findings to inform | legislative frameworks to support the |
| the proposed framework. | planning of Third Places. |
| Recommend a framework to enhance social | Planning recommendation 5: Employ a |
| sustainability through the planning of Third | framework to enhance social sustainability |
| Places, translating literature and empirical | within the South African context through |
| investigation findings to the South African | focussing on the planning of Third Places. |
| context. | |

7.2.1 Planning recommendation 1: Enhance social sustainability within sustainable development approaches

This research focused on social sustainability as a dimension of sustainable development, acknowledging the multi-disciplinary nature thereof (cross-reference to Chapter 2). Relevant legislative documents on municipal level should incorporate such a focus within urban context.

When referring to sustainable urban development, the inclusion of the economic, environmental and social aspects is accepted. Social sustainability could be emphasised within sustainable urban development by addressing the following elements:

- 1. Improve the extent to which social sustainability is defined, understood and operationalised within sustainable development approaches.
- 2. Clear orientation of proposed approaches towards social sustainability, user croup considered for enhanced social sustainability through Third Place planning.
- 3. Identify key challenges for creating social sustainability.

For the focus to be shifted from planning for sustainable development to designing for social sustainability, Table 7-2 illustrates the interface regarding the recoded design consideration (cross-reference to Section 3.5) for the proposed framework and the spatial link to enhance social sustainability derived from the literature and empirical investigation (cross-reference to Section 2.5 and Section 5.3). The social sustainability drivers propose three main principles applicable to the eight recoded design considerations.

Table 7-2: Interface between the design considerations and social sustainability drivers

| | DESIGN CONSIDERATIONS | Social inclusivity | Multi-functionality | Accessibility | Perceptibility | Marketability | Environmental sensitivity | Adaptability | Intrinsic connectivity |
|--------------------------|--|--|--------------------------|--|---|--------------------------------|--|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| DRIVERS | Maintaining scale and capacity | Social stage and opportunity for interaction | | Development scale (pedestrian) to enhance access | | | Development scale for interaction between human and nature | | |
| L SUSTAINABILITY DRIVERS | Social cohesion and social capital | Interactional platforms | Divers uses and users | | | Enhancing a sense of community | | Reclaim space for place | |
| SOCIAL | Placement of high value on quality of life | | | | Increase the quality of life experienced within the community | | | | Primary focus on user |

From Table 7-2 it was evident that the specific design considerations proposed for the planning of Third Places could enhance social sustainability though a spatial link considering Third Place scale and capacity, social cohesion and social capital as well as placing high value on quality of life. These main principles were integrated in the proposed framework for the local South African context.

In accordance to recommendation 1, highly-developed societies are becoming increasingly dynamic regarding social sustainability (Cilliers & De Jong, 2013:2). The design considerations proposed within the local context of South Africa should facilitate these changing needs.

7.2.2 Planning recommendation 2: Emphasise the planning of Third Places within broader spatial planning approaches

The planning of Third Places is limited within current spatial planning approaches. The impact and benefits of Third Places has been confirmed (cross-reference to Section 2.7), increasing the importance for the inclusion of Third Places planning to be emphasised within the local context of South Africa.

Phase 2 of the empirical section of this research (cross-reference to Section 5.3) consisted of an expert-survey. Within the survey, Question 7 required the participants to indicate the extent of their familiarity regarding Third Places. 46,7% of the participants indicated a moderately familiarity, as illustrated in Figure 7-2.

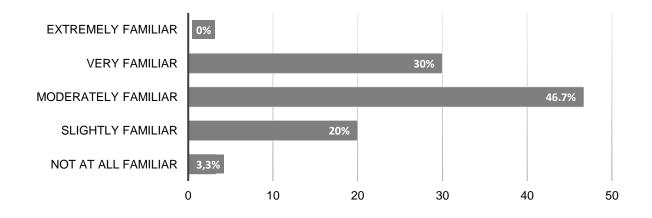


Figure 7-2: Questionnaire survey of participant familiarity regarding Third Places

The impact of Third Places within urban areas can only be comprehended through an enhanced understanding of these Third Places for the South African context. Figure 7-2 motivates a need for an improved understanding on Third Places in order to emphasise the benefits and impacts provided by Third Place planning within broader spatial planning approaches. Emphasising the planning of Third Places can be achieved through contextualised research and training regarding the subject matter. Within the contextualised research and training, an understanding of the benefits (cross-reference to Section 2.7.2) provided by these Third Places, design considerations (cross-reference to Chapter 3) for Third Places and context specific considerations should be emphasised. To improve this understanding and encourage its inclusion in broader spatial planning approaches, supplementary data, international best practices, and constant case study reviewing of current successful Third Places, as well as cross-continental research is required in order to improve the understanding of Third Place planning within South African and emphasised within broader spatial planning approaches.

7.2.3 Planning recommendation 3: Transform current urban spaces to Third Places to enhance broader social sustainability objectives

Lefebvre (1991:190) argues that life should be changed by changing space first (cross-reference to Section 2.6). As portrayed in Section 2.6 of this research, definite dissimilarities exist between space and place. A space is transformed into a place when meaning and value is added, and a pause within the space is created (cross-reference to Section 2.6).

With pockets of lost open spaces currently existing within urban areas of South Africa, along with unoccupied public places, a lighter, quicker and cheaper approach as put forward by PPS (2015) can be applied. Transformation and redesign could be applied, resulting in the transformation or upgrade of a current space to a public place, and more specifically a Third Place. Figure 7-3 illustrates the recommendation to reclaim public space for public use through the transformation of space to place by referring to four main drivers to be included. The main driver, policy and legislative frameworks, should be considered to ensure the transformation of space to place is in line with guiding planning policies on local municipal level. However, to ensure the successful transformation, the planning guidelines from local municipalities should include expert considerations and include a public participation approach to ensure user need requirements are addressed. Finally, impacted by the existing drivers, planning considerations and guidelines approached for the transformation from space to place is informed by the framework proposed in the context of current South African realities and challenges.

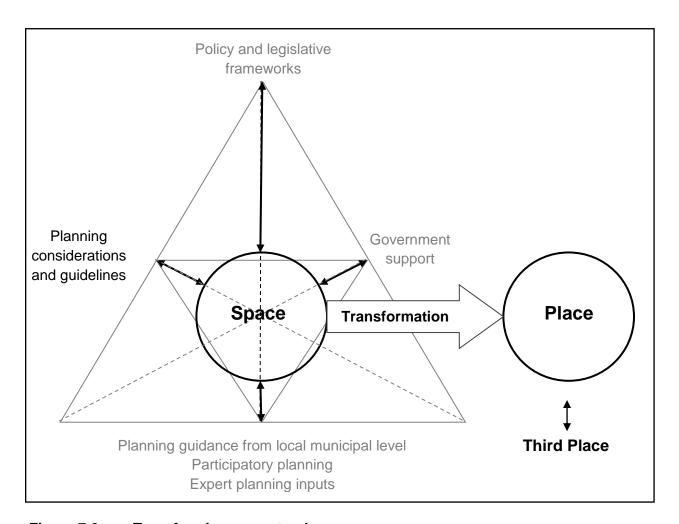


Figure 7-3: Transforming space to place

The transformation from space to place could be achieved through considering the proposed framework to enhance social sustainability through planning for Third Places in South Africa.

7.2.4 Planning recommendation 4: Enhance social sustainability within policy and legislative frameworks to support the planning of Third Places

Social sustainability should be enhanced within policy and legislative frameworks. Due to Strategic Spatial Development Plans implemented on different levels, as illustrated in Figure 7-4, any intervention to enhance social sustainability should articulate the main objectives with regard to social sustainability development and implementation strategies. Furthermore, as the planning of Third Places require support within policy and legislative frameworks, specific revisions are necessitated, and the success of these revisions will require public participation, users' input, expert opinions, as well as private sector and governmental involvement regarding

the specific policy and legislative framework. It is only through a synergistic, multi-institutional and multidimensional approach that the importance of Third Places can be realised, that would ultimately result in revised policies and legislative frameworks to support the planning of Third Places in line with objectives of social sustainability.

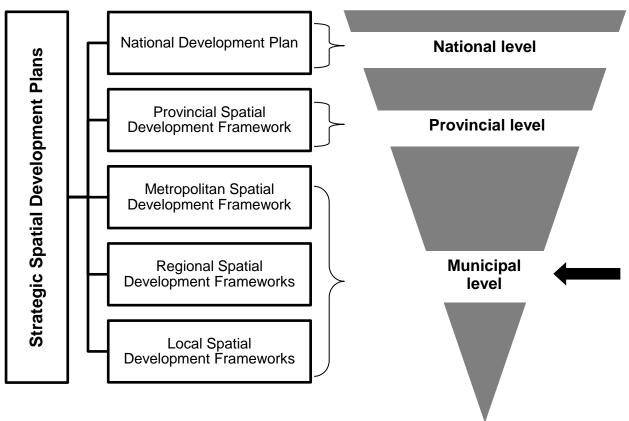


Figure 7-4: Hierarchy of plans with focus area

As illustrated in Figure 7-4, it is proposed that the specific design considerations and planning guidelines for enhances social sustainability through the planning of Third Places be implemented on local municipal level. As a result, the focus is placed directly on the specific municipal area in terms of the urban environment, considering Third Place planning. Third Place planning should thus be enhanced in future local policy and legislative frameworks on municipal level, as this is where the planning and development take effect and direct social enhancement with regard to the people can be enhanced.

SPLUMA replaced the town planning ordinances and the Development Facilitation Act used by planning departments within municipalities (Department of Rural Development and Land Reform Strategic Plan, 2015:5; South African Cities Network, 2015:19). Currently acting as the main legislation governing planning (cross-reference to Section 4.3.5), SPLUMA, as national

legislation, consists of land use management bylaws on municipal level as illustrated in Figure 7-5. The municipal bylaws regarding SPLUMA are a form of delegated legislation influenced on municipal level, where possible opportunities for revisions and new initiatives could be proposed. To enhance social sustainability within the local context of South Africa, the notion of Third Place planning was proposed. The framework for enhances social sustainability through Third Place planning recommended in this research could be proposed on municipal level in the context of each municipal bylaws. This will ensure that the framework is considered in the context of the specific focus area where Third Place planning is proposed. The recommended framework will consequently be approached according to context-based local realities and challenges applicable in the municipal boundaries.

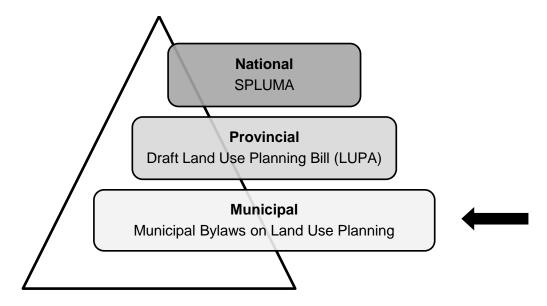


Figure 7-5: SPLUMA context with focus area

The benefits of Third Places should be quantified to build a case for enhanced social sustainability. Although support and guidance from local municipalities is necessary to enhancing social sustainability through the planning of Third Places, participatory planning and expert planning inputs is in addition required.

7.2.5 Planning recommendation 5: Employ a framework to enhance social sustainability within the South African context through focussing on the planning of Third Places

The planning of Third Places is proposed in this research to enhance social sustainability within the South African context. Third Places remain a fairly new concept within applicable South African policy and legislative frameworks (cross-reference to Section 4.3). For this reason, managing authorities on local municipal level could emphasise the importance of social sustainability and take the lead in acknowledging the importance of Third Places within the local South African context. Accordingly, Third Places should not be privatised and is motivated by PPS (2012:3), stating "what defines a character of a city is its public space, not its private space. What defines the value of the private assets of the space are not the assets by themselves but the common assets. The value of the public good affects the value of the private good. We need to show every day that public spaces are an asset to a city".

However, the success of Third Place planning relies on public participation. The aim is to improve urban life through effective influences (Narooie, 2014:9-10; Zhang, 2015:3). This necessitates insisting on a "people-oriented approach" (Project for Public Spaces and Metropolitan Planning Council, 2008:5; Town and Country Planning Association, 2012:27) to meet people's functional requirements and needs within specific urban areas. Public participation as part of a people-orientated planning approach is referred to as a bottom-up approach (Schlebusch, 2015:67), where the public should have the majority input in terms of the design and provided activities within Third Places in order to ensure regularity and a functional place for all. Public participation methods were included as a guideline in the refined framework for the South African context. Motivating the inclusion of public participation, the importance thereof was emphasised in the planning and design considerations of the planning approaches (cross-reference to Section 3.2 and Section 3.3) and the case study review highlighting international best practices (cross-reference to Section 5.2). Finally, emphasis was places on the importance of participatory planning in the expert-survey conducted for local perspectives (cross-reference to Section 5.3.1). In this the aim is to develop joint-control participation process, where both the public and government have influence (Goosen, 2015:41).

This research recommended a framework to enhance social sustainability through the planning of Third Places. The Third Places should adapt effective design considerations (cross-reference to Section 3.5 and Section 6.2.5) to ensure regularity within these places. The proposed framework could be adopted on local municipal level as a point of departure in planning for Third Places within the local context of South Africa, along with strategic agreements on a local level for ongoing maintenance to follow.

Table 7-3: The South African Third Place focus and approach integrated in the refined framework

Refined framework for the South African context

| The Third Place (context-based) | Planning approach design considerations interpreted in terms of Third Place objectives | Planning guidelines: The South African approach (context-based considerations) |
|--|--|---|
| Any sustainable place created by its social surroundings, integrated in the urban area, focused on the social dimension for a personal experience on neutral ground for all. The Third Place fulfils an individual functional need, providing diverse activities and amenities for regularity. | Social inclusivity Creation of a platform for community cohesion and social inclusion by improving the ability and opportunity on which individuals and groups take part in society. The fostering of social activities on neutral ground. | Setting of a social stage - cultural approach - opportunity for interaction - neighbourhood scale |
| | Multi-functionality Active space enhancing characteristic uniqueness, through providing a variety (10+) of activities and amenities to focus on the enhancement of the human experience for each individual within the Third Place. | Diversity for regularity - varied uses for place attraction - user need diversity - day- and night usage - innovation in design through creativity |
| | Accessibility Internal and external place connectedness encouraging convenient pedestrian movement flow. | Pedestrian-orientated - entrance and exit enhancement - walkability - network linkages and proximity - streetscape enhancement |
| | Perceptibility The display of social niceties to enhance the overall character (sense of place) through smart and adaptation designs. | Sense of place - public furniture - safety - shared space through mixed-use - layout to enhance enclosure |
| | Marketability The attractiveness, practicality and usefulness for voluntary gatherings to occur through the establishment of user need attraction for regularity. | LQC strategy to enhance social sustainability - public participation - experimental approach - consistency for quality - unique selling point |
| | Environmental sensitivity Enhancement of a sustainable green design for current and future use, relating to natural environmental diversity. | Nature-based solutions - water efficiency - local materials and resources - community priority of green initiatives - post-implementation maintenance strategy - social and functional diversity of greenery - plan within ecological limits for biodiversity enhancement |
| | Adaptability Compact layout design in context through incorporating multi-scale interconnected systems for the Third Place to be modified. | Transformation of existing open spaces to Third Places - reclaiming unused space for transformation - flexibility for change |
| | Intrinsic connectivity Mental and emotional sense of well-being based on person-process-place attachment. | Focused participatory planning - sense of authenticity to influence a personal experience |

Table 7-3 represents the refined framework for the planning of Third Places to enhance social sustainability in South Africa. However, the South African approach (context-based considerations) associated with the recoded design considerations was captured in Table 7-3 and elaborated on accordingly in the context of the challenges and opportunities relating to the South African context, as perceived from a spatial planning perspective, to improve these design considerations through the context-based considerations established. The empirical investigation (best practices and expert-survey initiatives) informed the refinement of the framework regarding the planning guidelines for the South African approach, context-based.

Guidelines informing the design considerations, contexts-based, should be enforced to successfully implement the design considerations constructed for the South African context. Through the context-based approach, social sustainability can be enhanced through the planning of Third Places.

7.2.5.1 Social inclusivity: Setting of a social stage

The provision of a social stage (cross reference to Table 3.4) and opportunities to interact should be considered to enhance social inclusivity within Third Places. As a result, the focus is placed on communication (cross-reference to Section 2.7.1) to enhance social interaction. In aiming to create these opportunities for social interaction, a cultural approach, regarding the surrounding environment, as well as development on a neighbourhood scale (cross-reference to Section 3.2.1) of the Third Place is proposed. Within South Africa public places and open spaces are often deprived of this element due to a lack of integrated amenities providing the opportunity for social interaction through the setting of a social stage. In addition to a cultural approach and neighbourhood scale development, an integrated layout is proposed to assist in contributing to opportunities for social interaction through setting a social stage. This proverbial social stage requires a welcoming and comfortable environment, which is in addition created through planning guidelines for an integrated and compact layout.

7.2.5.2 Multi-functionality: Diversity for regularity

Multi-functionality was proposed as the second design consideration to enhance social sustainability through the planning of Third Places. To enhance multi-functionality, the focus should be placed on diversity of uses and users. This will enhance opportunities for place attraction and regularity of the Third Place. The design of a place, its uses and functions resonate differently with diverse groups. User need diversity should thus inform the provision of

uses and ensure multi-functionality. Designing according to user need requirements of the Third Place and direct vicinity could assists in providing diversity and is proposed to be achieved through participatory methods. The South African reality requires planning for a diverse user group through innovation in design and applying creativity in this regard. Multi-functionality should in addition be enhanced through day- and night usage of the Third Place provided which could also enhance regularity.

7.2.5.3 Accessibility: Pedestrian-orientated

The location of the Third Place is concerned with the accessibility thereof within broader spatial planning realities of the urban area and should lend itself towards optimised accessibility (entrance and exit enhancement). A pedestrian-orientated approach is proposed in this regard, ensuring comfortable pedestrian movement flow and ensure car-free zones through streetscape enhancement and network linkages with the surrounding areas.

7.2.5.4 Perceptibility: Sense of place

Contributing to perceptibility, sense of place should be enhanced. In South Africa the provision of public places cannot compete for popular or political support in the face of demands for basic services, due to increasing population growth (cross-reference to Section 4.2). This results in neglected and abandoned current open spaces and public places. In order to transform space to place (cross-reference to Section 7.2.3) and plan for Third Places, safety perceptions and comfort should be considered and enhanced. Public furniture, shared spaces through mixed-uses and enclosure through the layout is proposed to enhance Third Place perceptibility.

7.2.5.5 Marketability: LQC strategy to enhance social sustainability

A lighter, quicker, cheaper approach was proposed to transform current open spaces to Third Places. This could assist to ensure enhanced marketability regarding the enhancement of social sustainability through the planning of Third Places in South African. This approach provides opportunities for quick transformations, creative planning and adaptive amenities to be implemented for user need satisfaction. Experimental approaches could also be considered and informed by public participation inputs to ensue user need requirements are met and a unique selling point is achieved.

7.2.5.6 Environmental sensitivity: Nature-based solutions

An environmental sensitivity approach is proposed through considering nature-based solutions in the planning of Third Places for enhanced social sustainability in South Africa. The Third Place should encourage social and functional diversity of greenery but should be planed within the ecological limits. Water efficiency usage and local materials and resources could in addition be considered for a green approach (cross-reference to Section 3.4). For continued sustainable development enhancement of the Third Place, specific post-implementation maintenance strategy should be developed and implemented in accordance to planning for Third Places in South Africa.

7.2.5.7 Adaptability: Transformation of existing open spaces to Third Places

Within South Africa urban open space and lost space continue to exist due to frail urban layout development which results in fragmentation and floating building (cross-reference to Section 4.2). In an attempt to integrate the urban context of South Africa these spaces could be integrated with the surrounding amenities (cross-reference to Section 7.2.3). As a result, the location of the Third Place should be considered in terms of the surrounding linkages, current infrastructure and broader spatial compatibility in order to reclaim and transform unused spaces to Third Places in South Africa. The integration of flexible planning approaches and the LQC (lighter, quicker, cheaper) approach could assist in transforming current spaces to places in the urban context.

7.2.5.8 Intrinsic connectivity: Focused participatory planning

Finally, an intrinsic connectivity design consideration was proposed for enhanced social sustainability through the planning of Third Places in South Africa. Diverse user need requirements should continually inform amenities and activities to be included and provided in the Third Place. These needs could also be informed through the inclusion of participatory planning strategies, planning not only for the people, but with the people. This approach enhances a connection between the user and the Third Place (person-place-process attachment) (cross-reference to Section 2.6). A personal experience and sense of authenticity is in addition achieved through informed user need identification strategies (participatory planning).

7.3 Opportunities for future research

In realising current urban realities and challenges faced within South Africa and the current strategic planning approaches along with maintenance insufficiencies, a number of questions remain with regard to improving social sustainability through the planning of Third Places within the urban context of South Africa. Opportunities for future research emerging from this study include:

- Consider additional planning approaches to inform a theory-based framework for enhanced social sustainability through the planning of Third Places.
- Expanding the refined framework for the South African context proposed here.
- Duplicating this study in South African rural environments.
- Investigating improved post-implementation maintenance strategies of Third Places on a local level within urban areas of South Africa.
- Practical implementation of the proposed refined framework for the local context.
- Multidisciplinary research between planners and public investors to develop proposals based on the recommendations made in this research.
- Considering the role of SPLUMA to facilitate the initiative of planning Third Places to enhance social sustainability within urban areas of South Africa.

7.4 Conclusion

Numerous factors exist that influence the success of Third Places within urban areas. It is a closely integrated process of creating and shaping places for people to live in. The aim of this research, linking with the main research question was to propose a framework to enhance social sustainability through the planning of Third Places within South Africa. The planning considerations proposed in the framework could inform integrated planning models, acting as planning-support systems, embracing a triple bottom line approach towards Third Places by incorporating local policy and legislative frameworks, sustainable development approaches, focusing on social sustainability and effective public participation methods. Based on the research conducted and the recommendations brought forward, a refined framework for the planning of Third Places to enhance social sustainability in the local South African context has been proposed.

Chapter 8 aimed to capture the contribution made towards new knowledge in this research.

CHAPTER 8: CONTRIBUTION TO NEW KNOWLEDGE

8.1 Introduction

Following the conclusions drawn from the research, as well as the proposed planning recommendations in Chapter 7, Chapter 8 captured the contribution towards new knowledge made by this research, as a required output for the successful completion of a philosophy doctorate.

8.2 New framework to enhance social sustainability through the planning of Third Places within the South African context

With specific reference to Section 6.2.5 and Section 7.2.5.

The compilation of a framework to enhance social sustainability through the planning of Third Places in South Africa, was based on the motivation of a gap existing between the importance for enhancing social sustainability and specific development guidelines on how to achieve this enhancement within the South African context. The importance and need for the facilitation of Third Places to enhance social sustainability from an expert point of view, based on the South African context, does not agree with the current provision made within policy and legislative frameworks. It should furthermore be highlighted that no framework currently exists within broader spatial planning guidelines for enhanced social sustainability through the planning of Third Places within the South African context.

The refined framework proposed for the South African context should be applied in accordance with recognising current challenges and realities. Based on specific planning considerations and design guidelines, the framework could be adopted on local level as a point of departure in planning for Third Places to enhance social sustainability within urban areas of South Africa.

Bearing in mind the current realities and challenges faced in South Africa and the framework proposed as a point of departure, it is advised that current urban space be utilised for the planning of Third Places to enhance social sustainability through the transformation and redesign of existing spaces. Table 8-1 illustrates the proposed framework to enhance social sustainability through the planning of Third Places.

Table 8-1: Refined framework to enhance social sustainability through the planning of Third Places

| The Third Place (context-based) | Interface with social sustainability drivers Ensuring sustainable communities through Third Places: Thee principles | Planning approach design considerations interpreted in terms of Third Place objectives | Planning guidelines: The South African approach (context-based considerations) | | |
|--|---|--|---|--|--|
| | | | | | |
| | Maintaining scale and capacity | Social inclusivity Creation of a platform for community cohesion and social inclusion by improving the ability and opportunity on which individuals and groups take part in society. The fostering of social activities on neutral ground. | Setting of a social stage - cultural approach - opportunity for interaction neighbourhood scale | | |
| Any sustainable place created by its social surroundings, integrated in the urban area, focused on the social dimension for a personal experience on neutral ground for all. The Third Place fulfils an individual functional need, providing diverse activities and amenities for regularity. | Recognising the importance of scale and capacity regarding the natural and human environment. | Multi-functionality Active space enhancing characteristic uniqueness, through providing a variety (10+) of activities and amenities to focus on the enhancement of the human experience for each individual within the Third Place. | Diversity for regularity - varied uses for place attraction - user need diversity - day- and night usage - innovation in design through creativity | | |
| | Social cohesion and social capital Encouraging social sustainability through enhancing a sense of community. The provision of interactional platforms created through lively elements, where space is regained for public use. Placement of high value on quality of life Primary focus is placed on the user, increasing the quality of life experienced within the community. Through realising the essential need of natural areas for human well-being, the sensitive interface between the natural and built environment is understood. | Accessibility Internal and external place connectedness encouraging convenient pedestrian movement flow. | Pedestrian-orientated - entrance and exit enhancement - walkability - network linkages and proximity - streetscape enhancement | | |
| | | Perceptibility The display of social niceties to enhance the overall character (sense of place) through smart and adaptation designs. | Sense of place - public furniture - safety - shared space through mixed-use - layout to enhance enclosure | | |
| | | Marketability The attractiveness, practicality and usefulness for voluntary gatherings to occur through the establishment of user need attraction for regularity. | LQC strategy to enhance social sustainability - public participation - experimental approach - consistency for quality - unique selling point | | |
| | | Environmental sensitivity Enhancement of a sustainable green design for current and future use, relating to natural environmental diversity. | Nature-based solutions - water efficiency - local materials and resources - community priority of green initiatives - post-implementation maintenance strategy - social and functional diversity of greenery - plan within ecological limits for biodiversity enhancement | | |
| | | Adaptability Compact layout design in context through incorporating multi-scale interconnected systems for the Third Place to be modified. | Transformation of existing open spaces to Third Places - reclaiming unused space for transformation - flexibility for change | | |
| | | Intrinsic connectivity Mental and emotional sense of well-being based on person-process-place attachment. | Focused participatory planning - sense of authenticity to influence a personal experience | | |

Refined framework for the South African context

8.3 Key generalisations confirmed and new contributions made

Generalisations confirmed and new contributions made to planning knowledge on Third Place planning were elaborated on in Table 6-6 (cross-reference to Section 6.3). Table 8-2 extends on the new contributions made by this research as portrayed under each concluding objective.

Table 8-2: Key generalisations confirmed and new contributions made by this research

CONTRIBUTIONS

Reflect on sustainable development, with the emphasis on social sustainability and the linkages with the Third Place concept

- Contribution to the discourse on sustainable development, the importance of social sustainability and the role of Third Places therein.
- Considering urban space to host social sustainability.
- · Identified interface for enhanced social sustainability through the planning of Third Places.
- Increased recognition on Third Place planning within urban areas of South Africa by emphasising the benefits provided.

Develop a theory-based framework for enhancing social sustainability through a qualitative enquiry into three purposefully selected planning approaches relating to the planning of Third Places

· Compilation of a theory-based framework based on three purposefully selected planning approaches.

Consider international case studies and identify best practices relating to the planning of Third Places, in an attempt to refine the proposed framework in line with guiding policy and legislative frameworks

- Capturing best practices relating to the planning of Third Places and comparing such to expert perspectives and local interpretation.
- Identify applicable national policy and legislative frameworks supporting Third Place planning to identify opportunity for inclusion (cross-reference to Section 7.2.4).

Capture the local interpretation of planning for Third Places from a professional perspective and to statistically interpret findings to inform the proposed framework

- · Capturing expert perspectives and local interpretation on the planning of Third Places to enhance social sustainability.
- Contribution to the literature on Third Places, especially from a local South African perspective, in line with guiding policy and legislative frameworks.
- Confirm the importance of public participation methods with regards to the notion of Third Place planning in South Africa.
 - Recommend a framework to enhance social sustainability through the planning of Third Places, translating literature and empirical investigation findings to the South African context
- Creation of a framework to enhance social sustainability through the planning of Third Places with the focus on the South African approach.

8.4 Closing remarks

Finally, this research made a valuable contribution towards enhancing the interface between social sustainability and Third Places, and how such interface could enhance broader social sustainability objectives, especially within the South African context. Furthermore, in an attempt to enhance social sustainability, the interface between Third Places and social sustainability has been drawn in this research.

The refined framework for enhanced social sustainability could be employed by Planners and other planning authorities, focussing on the planning of Third Places within the South African context.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Abrahams, F. 2005. A review of provincial land-use planning in the Western Cape. Cape Town: University of Cape Town. (Dissertation – Masters).

Agnew, J. 2011. Space and place: handbook of geographical knowledge. London: Sage.

Ahern, J. 2011. From fail-safe to safe-to-fail: sustainability and resilience in the new urban world. *Landscape and Urban Planning*, 100(4):34-343.

Ahern, J. 2007. Green infrastructure for cities: the spatial dimension. (*In* Novotny, V. & Brown, P. (*eds*). Cities of the future: towards integrated sustainable water and landscape. IWA Publishing: London, p. 267-283).

Al-Bishawi, M. & Ghadban, S.S. 2011. A methodological approach for reading urban open space. *ArchNet-IJAR*, 5(1):73-85.

Alexander, C. & Tang, L. 2010. Las Ramblas, Barcelona, Spain. http://courses.be.uw.edu/SDMasterStudio/wp-content/themes/gehl-studio/downloads/Winter2010/LasRamblas.pdf Date of access: 15 Sept. 2017.

Al-Hagla, K. 2008. Towards a sustainable neighbourhood: the role of open spaces. *ArchNet-IJAR*, 2(2):162-177.

Alidoust, S., Bosman, C. & Holden, G. 2015. Socially healthy ageing: the importance of Third Places, soft edges and walkable neighbourhoods. Paper presented at the State of Australian Cities Conference, Gold Coast, Australia, 9–11 December 2015.

https://www.researchgate.net/profile/Sara_Alidoust/publication/309752006_Socially_Healthy_A geing_The_Importance_of_Third_Places_Soft_Edges_and_Walkable_Neighbourhoods/links/58 21c08708ae5385869fdf3c/Socially-Healthy-Ageing-The-Importance-of-Third-Places-Soft-Edges-and-Walkable-Neighbourhoods.pdf Date of access: 12 Feb. 2018.

Alvarez, A.B. 2012. New York City's High Line: participatory planning or gentrification?. http://forms.gradsch.psu.edu/diversity/mcnair/mcnair_jrnl2012_14/files/2012-Alvarez.pdf Date of access: 12 Feb. 2017.

Arefi, M. 1999. Non-place and placelessness as narratives of loss: rethinking the notion of place. *Journal of Urban Design*, 4(2):179-193.

Assefa, G. & Frostell, B. 2007. Social sustainability and social acceptance in technology assessment: a case study of energy technologies. *Technology in Society*, 29 (1):63-78.

Ataguba, J.E.O. & Alaba, O. 2012. Explaining health inequalities in South Africa: a political economy perspective. *Development Southern Africa*, 29(5):758.

Atiqul, H.A.Q. & Shah, M.D. 2011. Urban green spaces and an integrated approach to sustainable environment. *Journal of Environmental Protection*, (2):601-608.

Badenhorst, M.S., Van Helden P. & Schoonraad, M.D. 2005. Post-apartheid Pretoria: verskuiwings in die sosio-ruimtelike landskap, 1996-2001. *Stads- en Streeksbeplanning*, 49:1-16.

Bagnasco, A., Ghirotto, L. & Sasso, L. 2014. Theoretical sampling. Oxford: John Wiley & Sons Ltd.

Baltimore City Department of Planning. 2010. Downtown Open Space Plan. http://www.godowntownbaltimore.com/docs/openspaceplan.pdf Date of access: 12 Feb. 2018.

Barcelona Green Infrastructure and Biodiversity Plan 2020. 2013. Councillor of Environment and Urban Services – Urban Habitat. Barcelona City Council.

http://ajuntament.barcelona.cat/ecologiaurbana/sites/default/files/Barcelona%20green%20infras tructure%20and%20biodiversity%20plan%202020.pdf Date of access: 12 Feb. 2017.

Barendse, P., Duerink, S. & Govaart, Y. 2007. A multi stakeholder collaborative urban planning model. Paper presented at ENHR 2007 International Conference Sustainable Urban Areas, Workshop 21: tools to facilitate housing and urban processes. Rotterdam, 26 June.

Barnett, J. 1995. The fractured metropolis. New York: HarperCollins.

Bartkus, V.O. & Davis, J.H. 2009. Social capital: Reaching reaching out, reaching in. Northampton, MA: Edward Elgar Publishing.

Basiago, A.D. 1999. Economic, social, and environmental sustainability in development theory and urban planning practice. *The Environmentalist*, 19(2):145-161.

Beatley, T. & Newman, P. 2013. Biophilic cities are sustainable, resilient cities. *Sustainability*, 5(8):3328-3345.

Bénit-Gbaffou, C. 2008. Unbundled security services and urban fragmentation in post-apartheid Johannesburg. *Geoforum*, 39(6):1933-1950.

Bernhardt, A. & Stoll, L. 2010. Creating Third Places: places where communities gather. *Downtown Economics*, 172. https://fyi.uwex.edu/downtowneconomics/files/2012/07/creating-third-places.pdf Date of access: 17 Mar. 2018.

Biart, M. 2002. Social sustainability as part of the social agenda of the European community, (*In* Ritt, T., ed. Soziale Nachhaltigkeit: Von der Umweltpolitik zur Nachhaltigkeit, 149:5-10.

Binns, T. & Nel, E. 2002. Devolving development: integrated development planning and developmental local government in post-apartheid South Africa. *Regional Studies*, 36(8):921-945.

Black, P. & Wiliam, D. 1998. Assessment and classroom learning. *Assessment in Education: Principles, Policy & Practice*, 5(1):7-75.

Bloomberg, M.R., Burney, D., Farley, T., Sadik-Khan, J. & Burden, A. 2010. Active design guidelines: promoting physical activity and health in design. City of New York.

Boud, D. & Falchikov, N. 1989. Quantitative studies of student self-assessment in higher education: a critical analysis of findings. *Higher Education*, 18(5):529-549.

Bridger, J.C. & Luloff, A.E. 1999. Towards an interactional approach to sustainable community development. *Journal of Rural Studies*, 15(4):377-387.

Bromley, R.D.F., Tallon, A.R. & Thomas, C.J. 2005. City centre regeneration through residential development: contributing to sustainability. *Urban Studies*, 42(13):2407-2429.

Bryant Park. http://bryantpark.org/ Date of access: 12 Feb. 2017.

Bryman, A. 2012. Triangulation. Department of Social Science. http://www.referenceworld.com/sage/socialscience/triangulation.pdf Date of access: 4 Feb. 2016. Busco, C., Fiori, G., Frigo, M.L. & Riccaboni, A. 2017. Sustainable development goals. http://sfmagazine.com/post-entry/september-2017-sustainable-development-goals/ Date of access: 2 Oct. 2018.

Butler A.E., Copnell, B., Hall, H. 2018. The development of theoretical sampling in practice. *Collegian: The Australian Journal of Nursing Practice, Scholarship and Research*, (25):561-566. https://www.collegianjournal.com/article/S1322-7696(17)30194-4/pdf Date of access: 15 Mar. 2018.

Cabras, I. & Mount, M. 2017. Assessing the impact of pubs on community cohesion and well-being in the English countryside. *International Journal of Contemporary Hospitality Management*, 29(1):489-506.

Camp, B.H. 2015. A study of Third Place: Benefits of shared leisure practices in public gathering places. Tennessee: Murfreesboro. (Thesis – PhD).

Cantor, L. 2014. High Line, Phase 3. http://www.greenroofs.com/projects/high-line-phase-3/. Date of access: 12 Feb. 2017.

Carmona, M. 2003. Is the grass greener...? Learning from international innovations in urban green space management. Available at: http://www.cabe.org.uk/publications/is-the-grass-greener Date of access: 15 Mar. 2017.

Carr, S., Francis, M., Rivlin, L.G. & Stone, A.M. 1992. Public space. New York: Cambridge University Press.

Carrasco, M. & Bilal, U. 2016. A sign of the times: to have or to be? Social capital or social cohesion? *Social Science & Medicine*, 159:127-131.

Chan, E.H.W. & Lee, G.K.L. 2008. Critical factors for improving social sustainability of urban renewal projects. *Springer: Soc Indic Res*, (85):243–256.

Charmaz, K. 2014. Constructing grounded theory. 2nd ed. London: SAGE Publications.

Cho, S., Lambert, D., Kim, S., Roberts, R. & Park, W. 2011. Relationship between value of open space and distance from housing locations within a community. *Journal of Geographical Systems*, 13(4):393-414.

Cilliers, D.P. 2010. The development and use of a land-use suitability model in spatial planning in South Africa. Potchefstroom: NWU. (Dissertation – Masters).

Cilliers, E.J. & Cilliers, S.S. 2016. Planning for green infrastructure: options for South African cities. Johannesburg: South African Cities Network.

Cilliers, E. J. & De Jong, N. 2013. Planning for lively spaces: Adding value to old spaces (South African approach). 49th ISOCARP conference, Brisbane, 1-4 October 2013.

Cilliers, E.J., Timmermans, W., Van den Goorbergh, F. & Slijkhuis, J.S.A. 2012. The lively cities (LICI) background document: LICI theory and planning approaches. Part of the LICI project (Lively Cities, made possible by INTERREG IVB North West Europe, European Regional Development Fund, European Territorial Cooperation, 2007-2013. Wageningen University of Applied Sciences, Van Hall Larenstein).

Cilliers, E.J., Timmermans, W., Van den Goorbergh, F. & Slijkhuis, J.S.A. 2014. Designing public spaces through the lively planning integrative perspective. *Environment, Development and Sustainability*, 17(6):1367-1380.

Cilliers, E.J., Timmermans, W., Van den Goorbergh, F. & Slijkhuis, J.S.A. 2015. Green place-making in practice: from temporary spaces to permanent places. *Journal of Urban Design*, 20(3):349-366.

City of Lonetree Colorado. 2013. Lonetree design guidelines.

http://cityoflonetree.com/planning/DesignGuidelines/ Date of access: 14 Nov. 2018.

City of Perth Planning Scheme. 2015. City of Perth.

https://www.perth.wa.gov.au/en/develop/planning-framework/planning-schemes Date of access: 17 Nov. 2018.

Cloete, A. 2014. Social cohesion and social capital: possible implications for the common good. *Verbum et Ecclesia*, 35(3):1-6.

Colantonio, A. 2009. Social sustainability: a review and critique of traditional versus emerging themes and assessment methods. http://eprints.lse.ac.uk/35867/ Date of access: 13 Jan. 2018.

Collins Dictionary. 2018. https://www.collinsdictionary.com/dictionary/english/framework Date of access: 18 Nov. 2018.

Commissioner for Children and Young People. 2011. Caring for the future growing up today: building spaces and places for children and young people.

https://www.ccyp.wa.gov.au/files/Building%20spaces%20and%20places%20for%20children%20and%20young%20people.pdf Date of access: 17 Aug. 2017.

Contemporist. 2012. Noriega Street Parklet by Matarozzi Pelsinger Design + Build. http://www.contemporist.com/noriega-street-parklet-by-matarozzi-pelsinger-design-build/ Date of access: 12 Jul. 2017.

Cortese, C., Haase, A., Grossmann, K. & Ticha, I. 2013. Governing social cohesion in shrinking cities: the cases of Ostrava, Genoa and Leipzig. *European Planning Studies*, 22(10):2050-2066.

Cowley, R. 2015. Reframing the problem of public space in the sustainable city. https://www.rc21.org/en/wp-content/uploads/2014/12/B2-Cowley.pdf Date of access: 6 Mar. 2017.

Cresswell, T. 2004. Place: a short introduction. Oxford: Blackwell.

Crick, A.P. 2011. Rethinking Oldenburg: Third Places and Generation Y in a developing country context. http://scholarworks.umass.edu/refereed/ICHRIE_2011/Friday/7 Date of access: 9 Nov. 2017.

David, J. 2002. Reclaiming the High Line. http://www.solaripedia.com/files/1048.pdf Date of access: 12 Feb. 2017.

Dawson, H. 2014. Youth politics: waiting and envy in a South African informal settlement. *Journal of Southern African Studies*, 40(4):861-882.

Day, K. 2003. New urbanism and the challenges of designing for diversity. *Journal of Planning Education and Research*, 23(1):83-95.

De Jong, N. 2014. Addressing social issues in rural communities by planning for lively places and green spaces. Potchefstroom: North-West University. (Thesis – Masters).

Designing Buildings Wiki. 2017. Mixed use development.

https://www.designingbuildings.co.uk/wiki/Mixed_use_development Date of access: 18 Nov. 2018.

De Villiers, P. 1997. New urbanism. Australian Planner, 34(1):30-34.

Dempsey, N., Bramley, G., Power, S. & Brown, C. 2011. The social dimension of sustainable development: Defining urban social sustainability. *Sustainable Development*, 19(5):289-300.

Departments of Planning and Development Review, Public Works and Public Utilities. 2016. Parklet design guidelines: a placemaking initiative of the city of Richmond, Virginia. http://www.richmondgov.com/PlanningAndDevelopmentReview/documents/Parklet_Design_Guideline_Richmond_VA_8-2016.pdf Date of access: 12 Feb. 2017.

Dewar, D. & Uytenbogaardt, S. R. 1995. Creating vibrant urban places to live: a primer. Cape Town: Headstart Developments.

Draucker, C.B., Martsolf, D.S., Ross, R. & Rusk, T.B. 2007. Theoretical sampling and category development in grounded theory. *Qualitative Health Research*, 17(8):1137-1148. http://journals.sagepub.com/home/qhr Date of access: 9 Aug. 2018.

Du Plessis, D.J. 2014. A critical reflection on urban spatial planning practices and outcomes in post-apartheid South Africa. *Urban Forum*, 25(1):69-88.

Ellis, S.M. & Steyn, H.S. 2013. Practical significance (effect sizes) versus or in combination with statistical significance (p-values). *Management Dynamics*, 12(4):51-53.

English Oxford Living Dictionaries. 2018. Enhance.

https://en.oxforddictionaries.com/definition/enhance Date of access: 14 Nov. 2018.

English Oxford Living Dictionaries. 2018. Municipality.

https://en.oxforddictionaries.com/definition/municipality Date of access: 18 Nov. 2018.

English Oxford Living Dictionaries. 2018. Planning.

https://en.oxforddictionaries.com/definition/planning Date of access: 19 Nov. 2018.

European Union. 2010. Making our cities attractive and sustainable: how the EU contributes to improving the urban environment. Luxembourg: Publications Office of the European Union.

Feil, A.A. & Schreiber, D. 2017. Sustainability and sustainable development: unravelling overlays and scope of their meanings. *Cad. EBAPE.BR*, 14(3):667-681. http://www.scielo.br/pdf/cebape/v15n3/en_1679-3951-cebape-15-03-00667.pdf Date of access: 2 Oct. 2018.

Ferrier, R. 2016. High Line Impacts on Chelsea. Prezi. https://prezi.com/wffxqctv9udn/high-line-impacts-on-chelsea/ Date of access: 12 Feb. 2019.

Financial Times. 2018. Definition of environmental sustainability. http://lexicon.ft.com/Term?term=environmental-sustainability Date of access: 23 Sept. 2018.

Freund, B. 2010. Is there such a thing as a post-apartheid city? Urban Forum, 21(3):283-298.

Friedmann, J. 2010. Place and place-making in cities: a global perspective. *Planning Theory & Practice*, 11(2), 149-165.

Ganis, M. 2015. Planning urban places: a small world network paradigm for dynamic urban placemaking. PhD theses, University of Queensland, Australia.

Gauteng City-Region Observatory (GCRO). 2013. A framework for a green infrastructure planning approach in the Gauteng City-Region.

http://www.gcro.ac.za/media/reports/GCRO_Green_Assets_Report_Digital_version__book.pdf Date of access: 25 Sept. 2018.

Gehl, J. 2010. Cities for people. London: Island Press.

Geis, D. & Kutzmark, T. 2006. Developing sustainable communities: the future is now. http://freshstart.ncat.org/articles/future.htm Date of access: 24 April 2017.

Giddings, B., Hopwood, B. & O'Brien, G. 2002. Environment, economy and society: fitting them together into sustainable development. *Sustainable Development*, 10(4):187-196.

Giuliani, M. V. 2003. Theory of attachment and place attachment. (*In* Bonnes, M., Lee, T. & Bonaiuto, M., *eds.* Psychological theories for environmental issues. Aldershot: Ashgate. p. 137-170).

Glaser, B. & Strauss, A. 1967. The discovery of grounded theory: strategies for qualitative research. London: Aldine Transactions.

Goebel, A. 2007. Sustainable urban development? Low-cost housing challenges in South Africa. *Habitat International*, 31(3-4):291-302.

Goldberger, P. 1983. The 'New' Bryant Park: A Plan of Pros and Cons. The New York Times. https://www.nytimes.com/1983/12/01/nyregion/the-new-bryant-park-a-plan-of-pros-and-cons.html Date of access: 12 Feb. 2019.

Gomes, C.S. & Moretto, E.M. 2011. A framework of indicators to support urban green area planning: a Brazilian case study. *Proceedings of the International Academy of Ecology and Environmental Sciences*, 1(1):47-56

http://www.iaees.org/publications/journals/piaees/articles/2011-1(1)/A-framework-of-indicators-to-support-urban.pdf Date of access: 2 Apr. 2018.

Goodland, R. & Daly, H. 1996. Environmental sustainability: universal and non-negotiable. *Ecological Applications*, 6(4):1002-1017.

Goosen, Z. 2014. The planning and development of child-friendly green spaces in urban South Africa. Potchefstroom: North-West University. (Thesis – Masters).

Goosen, Z. 2015. The planning and development of child-friendly green spaces in urban South Africa. *Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries*, 4(4-1):33-44.

Hansen, R. 2015. Green Surge report of case study city portraits. https://greensurge.eu/filer/GREEN_SURGE_Report_of_City_Portraits.pdf Date of access: 15 Sept. 2017.

Hardoy J., Mitlin D. & Satthertwaite D. 1992. Environmental problems in Third World cities. London: Earthscan Publications.

Harris, K. 2003. Your Third Place or mine? Public libraries and local communities. *Public Library Journal*, 18(2):26-29. https://www.statelibraryofiowa.org/ld/c-d/continuing-ed/townmtgs/twnmeet2011/2011handouts/thirdplacehandout/at_download/file Date of access: 9 Jan. 2018.

Harrison, P., Todes, A. & Watson, V. 2008. Planning and transformation: lessons from the South African experience. London: Routledge.

Harrison, S. & Dourish, P. 1996. Re-place-ing space: the roles of place and space in collaborative systems. (*In* CSCW. Proceedings of the 1996 ACM conference on computer supported cooperative work, p. 67-76).

Häussermann, H. 2006. Berlin: From divided into fragmented city. *Studies in Culture, Polity and Identities*, 7(1):1-15.

Herreros, F. 2004. The problem of forming social capital: why trust? Houndsmill: Palgrave Macmillian

Hickman, P. 2013. Third Places and social interaction in deprived neighbourhoods in Great Britain. *Journal of Housing and the Built Environment*, 28(2):221-236.

Hidding, M.C. & Teunissen, A.T.J. 2002. Beyond fragmentation: new concepts for urban-rural development. *Landscape and Urban Planning*, 58:297-308.

High Line. 2017. https://www.thehighline.org/ Date of access: 12 Mar. 2017.

Hobart City Council. 2010. Hobart public spaces and public life, a city with people in mind. http://www.hobartcity.com.au/Hobart/A_City_with_People_in_Mind Date of access: 18 Jul. 2017.

Hopkins, J. 2007. Social housing in South Africa: review of South Africa's housing policy. http://www.cih.org.hk/publication_dnload/events2006112401/Social%20Housing%20in%20Sout h%20Africa%20by%20John%20Hopkins.pdf Date of access: 16 Mar. 2018.

International Institute for Sustainable Development (IISD). 2018. https://www.iisd.org/pdf/2012/sd_timeline_2012.pdf Date of access 3 Sept. 2018. Jabareen, Y.R. 2006. Sustainable urban forms: their typologies, models, and concepts. *Journal of Planning Education and Research*, 26(1)38-52. https://my.vanderbilt.edu/greencities/files/2014/08/Jabareen.pdf Date of access 3 Aug. 2018.

Jacobs, A.B. 1993. Great streets. Cambridge, MA: The MIT Press.

Janmaat, J.G. 2011. Social cohesion as real-life phenomenon: assessing the explanatory power of the universalist and particularist perspectives. *Social Indicators Research*, 100(1):61-83. http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/s11205-010-9604-9 Date of access: 15 Aug. 2018.

Jeffres, L.W., Bracken, C.C., Jian, G., & Casey, M.F. 2009. The impact of Third Places on community quality of life. *Applied Research in Quality of Life*, 4(4):333-345.

Jonck, P., Goujon, A., Testa, M.R. & Kandala, J. 2015. Education and crime engagement in South Africa: a national and provincial perspective. *International Journal of Educational Development*, 45:141-151.

Jürgens, U., Donaldson, R., Rule, S. & Bähr, J. 2013. Townships in South African cities: literature review and research perspectives. *Habitat International*, 39:256-260.

Jürgens, U., Marais, L., Barker, C. & Lombaard, M. 2003. Socio-demographic transformation in the Bloemfontein inner-city area. *Acta Academica Supplementum*, 3:34-54.

Karacor, E. 2014. PlaceMaking Approachment to Accomplish Social Sustainability. *European Journal of Sustainable Development*, 4:253-262.

Kates, R.W., Parris, T.M. & Leiserowitz, A.A. 2005. What is sustainable development? Goals, indicators, values, and practice. *Environment: Science and Policy for Sustainable Development*, 47(3):8-21.

Kawachi, I. 1999. Social capital and community effects on population and individual health. *Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences*, 896(1):120-130.

Kay, D. 2007. South African city planning in a post-apartheid era. http://www.lulu.com/shop/david-kay/south-african-city-planning-in-a-post-apartheid-era/ebook/product-2134012.html Date of access: 7 Apr. 2017. Kim, J.K. & Skinner, C.J. 2013. Weighting in survey analysis under informative sampling. http://jkim.public.iastate.edu/presentation/p2013-2.pdf Date of access: 18 Nov. 2018.

Klaaren, J. 2015. Review of governing through crime in South Africa: the politics of race and class in neoliberalizing regimes. *Law & Society Review*, 49(2):551-554.

Kotze, J.S. & Prevost, G. 2015. Born free: an assessment of political identity formation and party support of South Africa's first post-Apartheid generation. *Africa Insight* 44(4):142-168.

Kuhlman, T & Farrington, J. 2010. What is sustainability?. https://www.mdpi.com/2071-1050/2/11/3436 Date of access: 8 Nov.2017.

Lamit, H., Ghahramanpouri, A. & Nia, S.S. 2013. A behavioral observation of street liveliness in Meldrum Walk, Johor Bahru of Malaysia. *International Transaction Journal of Engineering, Management, & Applied Sciences & Technologies*, 4(1):3-14.

Lanham, K.F. 2007. Planning as placemaking: tensions of scale, culture and identity. Blacksburg: Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University.

Lefebvre, H. 1991. The production of space. Oxford: Blackwell.

Lepofsky, J. & Fraser, J. C. 2003. Building community citizens: Claiming the right to place-making in the city. *Urban Studies*, 40(1):127-142.

Levent, T.B., Vreeker, R. & Nijkamp, P. 2004. Multidimensional evaluation of green spaces: a comparative study on European cities. dare.ubvu.vu.nl/bitstream/1871/8928/1/20040017.pdf Date of access: 17 Feb. 2017.

Liljefors, P. 2016. Social sustainability in Swedish urban development – what does it mean? A case study of three Citylab Action pilot projects. https://www.diva-portal.org/smash/get/diva2:972522/FULLTEXT01.pdf Date of access: 3 Jul. 2018.

Littig, B. & Griebler, E. 2005. Social sustainability: a catchword between political pragmatism and social theory. *International Journal of Sustainable Development*, 8(1):65-79.

Liu, Z., Mao, F., Zhou, W., Li, Q., Haung, J. & Zhu, X. 2007. Accessibility assessment of urban green space: A quantitative perspective. Beijing: Tsinghua University School of Architecture.

Lombard, M. 2014. Constructing ordinary places: Place-making in urban informal settlements in Mexico. Journal of Progress in Planning, 94:1-53.

Lorraine, M.M. & Molapo, R.R. 2014. South Africa's challenges of realising her socioeconomic rights. *Mediterranean Journal of Social Sciences*, 5(27):900-907.

Loudier, C. & Dubois, J.L. 2001. Public spaces: between insecurity and hospitality. http://www.ocs.polito.it/biblioteca/verde/uk_PARTIE201_C133.134.pdf Date of access: 5 Jun. 2018.

Loukaitou-Sideris, A., Brozen, M. & Callahan, C. 2012. Reclaiming the right-of-way: a toolkit for creating and implementing parklets.

https://nacto.org/docs/usdg/reclaiming_the_right_of_way_brozen.pdf Date of access: 13 Feb. 2017.

Louw, H.A. & Bredenkamp, I.M. 1999. The implications of democratization on access to higher education in South Africa. Unpublished report: Technikon Southern Africa, South Africa.

Low, S.M. & Altman, I. 1992. Place attachment: a conceptual inquiry: New York: Plenum.

Lozano, R. 2008. Envisioning sustainability three-dimensionally. *Journal of Cleaner Production*, 16(17):1838-1846.

Lydon, D., Quraeshi, S., Hack, G., Halprin, L. & Francis, M. 1998. Bryant Park, New York City. New York: Hardy Holzman Pfeiffer Associates.

Lynch, K. 1960. The image of the city. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press.

Madanipour, A. 1996. Design of urban space: an inquiry into a socio-spatial process. Oxford: John Wiley & Sons Ltd.

Manley, K. & Rose, T.M. 2014. Green urbanism and diffusion issues. https://eprints.qut.edu.au/81183/1/SB14%20paper%20authors%20copy.pdf Date of access: 8 Sept. 2018.

Marcinczak, S. & Sagan, I. 2011. The socio-spatial restructuring of Lódz, Poland. *Urban Studies*, 48(9):1789-1809.

Marshall, T. 2000. Urban planning and governance: is there a Barcelona model? *International Planning Studies*, 5(3):299-319.

Massey, D. 2005. For space. London: Sage Publications.

Mathews, S., Loots, L., Sikweyiya, Y. & Jewkes, R. 2012. Sexual abuse. (*In* Van Niekerk, A., Suffla, S. & Seedat, M. *eds.* Crime, violence and injury in South Africa: 21st century solutions for child safety. Houghton: Psychological Society of South Africa. p. 84-96.)

Matthews, P. & Besemer, K. 2015. Social networks, social capital and poverty: panacea or placebo?. *Journal of Poverty & Social Justice*, 23(3):189-201.

Mavhandu-Mudzusi, A.H. & Sandy, P.T. 2015. The experiences of HIV-serodiscordant couples in Soweto, South Africa. *International Nursing Review*, 62(2):196-202.

Mazumdar, S. & Mazumdar, S. 2004. Religion and place attachment: a study of sacred places. *Journal of Environmental Psychology*, 24(3):385-397.

McAllister, C. 2008. Child friendly cities and land use planning: implications for children's health. *Environments Journal*, 35(3):45-56.

http://citeseerx.ist.psu.edu/viewdoc/download?doi=10.1.1.393.63&rep=rep1&type=pdf Date of access: 2 Nov. 2017.

Meade, C.S., Towe, S.L., Watt, M.H., Lion, R.R., Myers, B. & Skinner, D. 2015. Addiction and treatment experiences among active methamphetamine users recruited from a township community in Cape Town, South Africa: A mixed-methods study. *Drug and Alcohol Dependence*, 152:79-86.

Mehta, V. & Basson, J.k. 2010. Third Places and the Social Life of Streets. *Environment and Behavior*, 42(6):779-805. https://www.raggeduniversity.co.uk/wp-content/uploads/2016/02/Thrid-Places-and-social-life-of-streets-ilovepdf-compressed.pdf Date of access: 6 Nov. 2017.

Mensah, C.A. 2014. Urban green spaces in Africa: nature and Challenges. *International Journal of Ecosystem*, 4(1):1-11.

https://www.researchgate.net/profile/Collins_Adjei_Mensah/publication/259779329_Urban_Gre

en_Spaces_in_Africa_Nature_and_Challenges/links/02e7e52dd1ca9c4078000000.pdf Date of access: 11 Jun. 2017.

Mesch, G.S. & Manor, O. 1998. Social ties, environmental perception, and local attachment. *Environment and Behavior*, 30(4):227-245.

Moir, S. & Carter, K. 2012. Diagrammatic representations of sustainability: a review and synthesis. (*In* Smith, S.D. *ed.* Procs 28th Annual ARCOM Conference, 3-5 September 2012, Edinburgh, UK, Association of Researchers in Construction Management, p. 1479-1489).

Morelli, J. 2011. Environmental sustainability: A definition for environmental professionals. *Journal of Environmental Sustainability*, 1(1).

https://scholarworks.rit.edu/jes/vol1/iss1/2/?utm_source=scholarworks.rit.edu%2Fjes%2Fvol1% 2Fiss1%2F2&utm_medium=PDF&utm_campaign=PDFCoverPages Date of access: 17 Aug. 2018.

Mpe, R. & Ogra, A. 2014. Making great places in slums/informal settlements. Proceedings of the conference Planning Africa 2014: Making Great Places.

http://www.planningafrica.org.za/images/banners/History-

Documents/01.%20SAPI%202014%20Conference%20Proceedings.pdf Date of access: 15 Jun. 2018.

Mubarak, F. 2016. Sustainable development and its origin.

http://en.envirocitiesmag.com/articles/issue-13/3.pdf Date of access: 12 Feb. 2018.

Nahapiet, J. & Ghosal, S. 1998. Social capital, intellectual capital and the organizational advantage. *Academy of Management Review* 23(2):242–266.

Narooie, M. 2014. Boosting public participation in urban planning through the use of web GIS technology: a case study of Stockholm County. Stockholm: KTH Royal Institute of Technology. (Dissertation – Masters).

Nash, V. & Christie, I. 2003. Making sense of community. London: Institute for Public Policy Research.

Nassar, U. 2013. Principles of green urbanism: the absent value in Cairo, Egypt. *International Journal of Social Science and Humanity*, 3(4):339-343.

Nelson, P. 2004. Barcelona, Spain: the complete integrated city. http://depts.washington.edu/open2100/Resources/1_OpenSpaceSystems/Open_Space_Systems/BarcelonaCaseStudy.pdf Date of access: 15 Sept. 2017.

Norberg-Schulz, C. 1976. The phenomena of place. (*In* Larice, M. & Macdonald, E. *eds.* The urban design reader. London: Routledge. p. 125-137).

Ocampo, L.A. & Clark, E.E. 2015. A sustainable manufacturing strategy framework: The convergence of two fields. *Asian Academy of Management Journal*, 20(2):29-57.

OECD. 2011. Development Co-operation Report 2011. http://www.oecd.org/dac/developmentco-operationreport2011.htm Date of access: 15 Aug. 2017.

Oldenburg, R. & Brissett, D. 1982. The Third Place. Qualitative Sociology, 5(4):265-284.

Oldenburg, R. 1999. The great good place: cafes, coffee shops, bookstores, bars, hair salons, and other hangouts at the heart of a community. 3rd ed. Cambridge, MA: Da Capo Press.

Osborn, D., Cutter, A. & Ullah, F. 2015. Universal sustainable development goals: understanding the transformational challenge for developed countries, report of a study by stakeholder forum. https://sustainabledevelopment.un.org/content/documents/1684SF_-_SDG_Universality_Report_-_May_2015.pdf Date of access: 18 Aug. 2017.

Oxoby, R. 2009. Understanding social inclusion, social cohesion and social capital. International Journal of Social Economics, 36(12):1133-1152. http://dx.doi.org/10.1108/03068290910996963 Date of access: 15 Mar. 2018.

Pacione, M. 2005. Urban geography: a global perspective. New York: Routledge.

Palacky, J. Wittmann, M. & Frantisak, L. 2015. Evaluation of urban open spaces sustainability. https://dspace.vutbr.cz/bitstream/handle/11012/42779/PALACKYAESOP2015FULLPAPERFINA L.pdf?sequence=13 Date of access: 10 Sept. 2017.

Palys, T. 2008. Purposive sampling. In L. M. Given (Ed.) The Sage Encyclopedia of Qualitative Research Methods, 2:697-698. Sage: Los Angeles.

Parker, E. 2014. Proposals for the development of green spaces in urban areas [personal interview]. 10 Mar. 2014. Durban.

Pecenka, C.J. & Kundhlande, G. 2013. Theft in South Africa: an experiment to examine the influence of racial identity and inequality. *Journal of Development Studies*, 49(5):737-753.

Peltzer, K., Ramlagan, S., Johnson, B.D. & Phaswana-Mafuya, N. 2010. Illicit drug use and treatment in South Africa: a review. *Substance Use & Misuse*, 45(13):2221-2243.

Phuttharak, T. & Dhiravisit, A. 2014. Rapid urbanization – its impact on sustainable development: a case study of Udon Thani, Thailand. *Asian Social Science*, 10(22):70-79. http://dx.doi.org/10.5539/ass.v10n22 Date of access: 15 Sept. 2018.

Pieterse, E. 2006. Building with ruins and dreams: some thoughts on realising integrated urban development in South Africa through crisis. *Urban Studies*, 43(2):285-304.

Pieterse, E. 2007. Tracing the 'integration' thread in the South African urban development policy tapestry. *Urban Forum*, 18(1):1-30.

Poulsen, L. & Silverman, M. 2005. Design strategies for the densification of low income housing. *International Journal for Housing Science and Its Applications*, 30(1):19-31.

Power, A. 2004. Sustainable communities and sustainable development: a review of sustainable communities. http://eprints.lse.ac.uk/28313/1/CASEreport23.pdf Date of access: 21 Oct. 2017.

Prange, M. 2014. Urban Design tools to improve child-friendly green spaces [personal interview]. 14 Apr. 2014. Durban.

Project for Public Spaces and Metropolitan Planning Council. 2008. A guide to neighborhood placemaking in Chicago. Chicago.

Project for Public Spaces. 2008. Streets as Places: Using streets to rebuild communities. https://uploads-

ssl.webflow.com/5810e16fbe876cec6bcbd86e/5b19499b941ffa434a23fea5_Using_Streets_to_ Rebuild_Communities.pdf Date of access 13 Jun. 2018. Project for Public Spaces. 2012. Placemaking and the future of cities.

https://www.pps.org/article/placemaking-and-the-future-of-cities Date of access: 13 Aug. 2018.

Project for Public Spaces. 2014. What makes a successful place? http://www.pps.org/reference/grplacefeat/ Date of access: 21 Apr. 2017.

Project for Public Spaces. 2015. Public places and spaces. http://www.pps.org/places/ Date of access: 19 Apr. 2015.

Putnam, R.D. 2000. Bowling alone: the collapse and revival of American community. New York: Simon & Schuster.

Ranjha, S. 2016. Green infrastructure: planning for sustainable and resilient urban environment. Brief for GSDR – 2016 Update.

https://sustainabledevelopment.un.org/content/documents/95599_Ranjha_Green%20infrastruct ure_planning%20for%20sustainable%20and%20resilient%20urban%20environment.pdf Date of access: 6 Sept. 2017.

Reddy, T.L. & Thomson, R.J. 2015. Environmental, Social and economic sustainability: implications for actuarial science. Presented to the Actuaries Institute ASTIN, AFIR/ERM and IACA Colloquia, 23-27 Augustus 2017, Sydney.

https://www.actuaries.asn.au/Library/Events/ASTINAFIRERMColloquium/2015/ReddyThompsonActuarialSciencePaper.pdf Date of access: 22 May 2018.

Romo, M. 2015. Public Green Space in Paris: sustainable development discourses in the objective of Le Grand Paris. Uppsala: Uppsala University. (Dissertation – Masters).

Rosen, M.A. & Kishawy, H.A. 2012. Sustainable manufacturing and design: concepts, practices and needs. *Sustainability*, 4(2):154-174.

Ross, N., Bowen, P.A. & Lincoln, D. 2010. Sustainable housing for low-income communities: lessons for South Africa in local and other developing world cases. *Construction Management & Economics*, 28(5):433-449.

Ross, R. 1999. A concise history of South Africa. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Rudofsky, B. 1969. Streets for people: a primer for Americans. New York: Doubleday & Company.

Sachs, I. 1999. Social sustainability and whole development: exploring the dimensions of sustainable development. London: Zed Books.

Sack, R. D. 1997. Homo Geographicus. Baltimore: Johns Hopkins University Press.

Saloojee, A. 2012. Place-making in the everyday: a case study of Fordsburg. Johannesburg: University of Johannesburg. (Mini-dissertation – Honours)

Saphan, L., Salas, M. & Rozario, C. 2016. Bryant Park, New York: Strangers in Public Spaces. *Streetnotes*, 25:1-17.

Scannell, L. & Gifford, R. 2010. Defining place attachment: A tripartite organizing framework. *Journal of Environmental Psychology*, 30(1):1-10.

Schatz, E., Madhavan, S. & Williams, J. 2011. Female-headed households contending with AIDS-related hardship in rural South Africa. *Health and Place*, 17(2):598-605.

Scheepers, T. 2000. A practical guide to law and development in South Africa. Kenwyn: Juta & Co.

Schilling, J. 2010. Towards a greener green space planning. Lund: Lund University. (Dissertation – Masters).

Schlebusch, S. 2015. Planning for Sustainable communities: evaluating place-making approaches. *Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries*, 4(1):59-72.

Schneider, M., Parry, C.D., Chersich, M., Temmerman, M. & Degomme, O. 2014. The impact of alcohol on HIV prevention and treatment for South Africans in primary healthcare: original research. *Curationis*, 37(1):1-8.

Schofield, J. & Szymanski, R. 2011. Sense of place in a changing world. (*In* Schofield, J. & Szymanski, R. *eds.* Local heritage, global context: cultural perspectives on sense of place. Surrey: Ashgate Publishing Limited. p. 1-11).

Silberberg, S., Lora, K., Disbrow, R. & Muessig, A. 2013. Places in the making: how placemaking builds places and communities. Boston, MA: MIT Press.

Simons, G.F. & Bird, S. 2008. Toward a Global infrastructure for the sustainability of language resources. Proceedings of the 22nd Pacific Asia Conference on Language, Information and Computation, 20-22 November 2008, Cebu City, Philippines.

https://scholars.sil.org/sites/scholars/files/gary_f_simons/preprint/paclic22.pdf Date of access: 5 May 2018.

Smith, D.M. 2000. Moral geographies: ethics in a world of difference. Edinburgh: Edinburgh University Press.

Smith, D.M. 2003. Urban fragmentation, inequality and social justice: ethical perspectives. (*In* Harrison, P. Huchzermeyer, M. & Mayekiso, M. *eds.* Confronting fragmentation: housing and urban development in a democratic society. Landsdowne: University of Cape Town Press).

Smith, K. & Davies, J. 2010. Qualitative data analysis. (*In* Dahlberg, L. & McCaig, C. *eds*. Practical researcher and evaluation: A start-to finish guide for practitioners. London: Sage. p. 145-158).

Soholt, H. 2004. Life, spaces and buildings: turning the traditional planning process upside down. Paper presented at Walk21-V Cities for People, The Fifth International Conference on Walking in the 21st Century, 9-11 June 2004, Copenhagen, Denmark.

Sohrabi, N.M. 2017. Public art: place making or focus on values (Case study: Vali-Asr Street, Tehran). *Arts and Social Science Journal* 8(3). https://www.omicsonline.org/open-access/public-art-place-making-or-focus-on-values-case-study-valiasr-streettehran-2151-6200-1000271.pdf Date of access: 4 Oct. 2018.

Sorsdahl, K., Stein, D.J., Carrara, H. & Myers, B. 2014. Problem solving styles among people who use alcohol and other drugs in South Africa. *Addictive Behaviours*, 39(1):122-126.

South Africa. 1996. Constitution of the Republic of South Africa 1996. Pretoria: Government Printer.

South Africa. 1998. National Environmental Management Act 107 of 1998. Pretoria: Government Printer.

South Africa. 2000. The Local Government: Municipal Systems Act 32 of 2000. Pretoria: Government Printer.

South Africa. 2009. National Urban Development Framework. Pretoria: Government Printer.

South Africa. 2011. National Strategy for Sustainable Development and Action Plan (2011-2014). Pretoria: Government Printer.

South Africa. 2013. Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act 16 of 2013. Pretoria: Government Printer.

South Africa. 2015. Department of Rural Development and Land Reform Strategic Plan 2015-2020. Pretoria: Government Printer.

South Africa. National Planning Commission. 2013. National Development Plan 2030. http://www.poa.gov.za/news/Documents/NPC%20National%20Development%20Plan%20Vision%202030%20-lo-res.pdf Date of access: 14 Oct. 2016.

South African Cities Network. 2015. SPLUMA as a tool for spatial transformation. http://www.sacities.net/wp-content/uploads/2015/SPLUMA-as-a-tool-for-spatial-transformation_final.pdf Date of access: 14 Jun. 2017.

South African Government Information. 2013. Legislation and policy. http://www.info.gov.za/aboutgovt/locgovt/legislation.htm Date of access: 6 Jul. 2017.

Southworth, B. 2007. City Squares in Cape Town's townships – public space as an instrument of urban transformation: the origins, objectives and implementation of the City of Cape Town's Dignified Places Programme.

http://www.treasury.gov.za/divisions/bo/ndp/TTRI/TTRI%20Oct%202007/Day%202%20-%2030%20Oct%202007/7.10%20Reading%20Public%20Spaces%20CoCT.PDF Date of Access: 12 May. 2017.

Spicker, P. 2014. Cohesion, exclusion and social quality. *International Journal of Social Quality*, 4(1):95-107.

Stein, N. 2003. Urban design between theory and practise: from conceptualisation to realisation and back again. Paper for the AESOP-ACSP Third Joint Conference, 8-12 July 2003, Leuven, Belgium.

https://pdfs.semanticscholar.org/1cda/46907d89053ac1061bea465c823771256863.pdf Date of access: 17 Apr. 2018.

Stephenwoo. 2016. TripAdvisor, Las Ramblas: Too many pros and cons. https://www.tripadvisor.co.za/ShowUserReviews-g187497-d190163-r343407502-Las_Ramblas-Barcelona_Catalonia.html Date of access: 12 Feb. 2019.

Stellenberg, E.L. 2015. Accessibility, affordability and use of health services in an urban area in South Africa. *Curationis*, 38(1):1-7

Stone, W. & Hughes, J. 2002. Understanding community strengths: can existing theories provide an overall framework for achieving and identifying strong communities? *Family Matters*, 62(6):1-8.

Strydom, W.J. 2014. Towards place-making in urban planning through participatory action research. Potchefstroom: North-West University. (Dissertation – Masters).

Suire, R., Rallet, A., Rochelandet, F. & Guibert, G. 2017. Places and third-places, are they the missing puzzle pieces in dynamic of cultural and creative clusters?. http://asrdlf2017.com/asrdlf2017_com/inc/resumes/24.pdf Date of access: 12 Feb. 2017.

Svetlana, B. 2013. World urbanization prospects and the problem of its infrastructural provision. *World Urbanization Prospects*, 46(1-2):72-81.

Thatcher, A. 2014. Theoretical definitions and models of sustainable development that apply to human factors and ergonomics.

http://proceedings.dtu.dk/fedora/repository/dtu:2471/OBJ/x152.747-752.pdf Date of access: 15 Aug. 2016.

The Savvy Backpacker. 2017. Barcelona travel guide — how to visit Barcelona on a budget. https://thesavvybackpacker.com/city-guide/barcelona-travel-guide-budget/ Date of access: 12 Feb. 2017.

The Scottish Government. 2011. Green Infrastructure: design and Placemaking. St Andrew's House: Edinburgh.

The South African Council for Professional Planners. 2018.

https://www.sacplan.org.za/index.php?option=com_content&view=article&id=70&Itemid=198 Date of access: 15 Nov. 2018.

The World Bank. 2012. Inclusive green growth: the pathway to sustainable development. Washington, DC: International Bank for Reconstruction and Development / International Development.

The World Bank. 2015. What does "urban" mean?.

http://blogs.worldbank.org/sustainablecities/what-does-urban-mean Date of access: 18 Nov. 2018.

Thrift, N. 2003. Performance and ... Environment and Planning A, 35(11):2019-2024.

Tissington, K. 2011. A resource guide to housing in South Africa 1994-2010. Legislation, policy, programmes and practice.

https://www.researchgate.net/publication/236144494_A_Resource_Guide_to_Housing_in_Sout h_Africa_1994_-_2010_Legislation_Policy_Programmes_and_Practice Date of access:12 Feb. 2018.

Todes, A., Karam, A., Klug, N. & Malaza, N. 2010. Beyond master planning? New approaches to spatial planning in Ekurhuleni, South Africa. *Habitat International*, 34(4):414-420.

Tomlinson, M.R. 2006. From quantity to quality: restructuring South Africa's housing policy ten years after. *International Development Planning Review*, 28(1):85-104.

Town and Country Planning Association. 2012. Planning for a healthy environment – good practice guidance for green infrastructure and biodiversity.

https://www.wildlifetrusts.org/sites/default/files/Green-Infrastructure-Guide-TCPA-TheWildlifeTrusts.pdf Date of access: 12 May. 2017.

Trancik, R. 1986. Finding lost space: theories of urban design. New York: John Wiley & Sons Inc.

Tripomatic. 2016. Barcelona Guide. http://guides.tripomatic.com/download/tripomatic-free-city-guide-barcelona.pdf Date of access: 9 Feb. 2017.

Tuan, Y.F. 2005. Space and Place: The perspective of experience. Minneapolis: University of Minnesota Press.

Turok, I. & Borel-Saladin, J. 2014. Is urbanisation in South Africa on a sustainable trajectory?. *Development Southern Africa*, 31(5):675-691.

United Nations Development Program. 2016. From the MDGs to sustainable development for all: lessons from 15 years of practice.

file:///F:/Electronic%20Library/From%20the%20MDGs%20to%20SD4All%20(1).pdf Date of access: 2 Oct. 2018.

United Nations. 2017. The Sustainable Development Goals Report 2017.

http://sdgactioncampaign.org/wp-

content/uploads/2017/07/TheSustainableDevelopmentGoalsReport2017.pdf Date of access: 2 Oct. 2018.

United States Environmental Protection Agency. 2012. Learn about sustainability. https://www.epa.gov/sustainability/learn-about-sustainability Date of access: 24 Sept. 2017.

US Legal. 2016. Public Place Law and Legal Definition.

https://definitions.uslegal.com/p/public-place/ Date of access: 18 Nov. 2018.

Vallance, S., Perkins, H.C. & Dixon, J.E. 2011. What is social sustainability? A clarification of concepts. *Geoforum*, 42(3):342-348.

Van Wyk, J. 1999. Planning law: principles and procedures of land-use management. Cape Town: Juta.

Veenhoven, R. & Ehrhardt, J. 1995. The cross-national pattern of happiness: test of predictions implied in three theories of happiness. *Social Indicators Research*, 34(1):33-68.

Vifell, Å.C., Soneryd, L. 2012. Organizing matters: How 'the social dimension' gets lost in sustainability projects. *Sustainable Development*, 20(1):18-27.

Walker, A. & Porraz, B. 2003. The case of Barcelona, Spain. https://www.ucl.ac.uk/dpu-projects/Global_Report/pdfs/Barcelona.pdf Date of access: 24 Sept. 2017.

Watson, V. 2009. "The planned city sweeps the poor away...": urban planning and 21st century urbanisation. Progress in Planning, 72(3):151-193.

World Commission on Environment and Development. 1987. Report of the World Commission on environment and development: "our common future". New York: United Nations.

Wei, Y. & Zhang, Z. 2012. Assessing the fragmentation of construction land in urban areas: An index method and case study in Shunde, China. *Land Use Policy*, 29(2):417-428.

Wells, W. 2010. What is green urbanism?. https://www.planetizen.com/node/46245 Date of access: 26 Mar. 2018.

Wiersum, K.F. 1995. 200 years of sustainability in forestry: lessons from History. *Environmental Management*, 19(3):321-329.

Willard, B. 2010. Sustainable Advantage: 3 Sustainability Models. https://sustainabilityadvantage.com/2010/07/20/3-sustainability-models/ Date of access: 18 Nov. 2018.

Wilson, F. 2011. Historical roots of inequality in South Africa. *Economic History of Developing Regions*, 26(1):1-15.

Wolch, J.R., Byrne, J. & Newell, J.P. 2014. Urban green space, public health, and environmental justice: the challenge of making cities "just green enough". *Landscape and Urban Planning*, 125:234-244. http://ced.berkeley.edu/downloads/research/LUP.parks.pdf Date of access: 7 Apr. 2017.

Woodcraft, S., Hackett, T. & Caistor-Arendar, L. 2011. Design for social sustainability: a framework for creating thriving new communities. S.I.: Future Communities.

Yaping, W. & Zongyi, Z. 2011. Assessing the fragmentation of construction land in urban areas: an index method and case study in Shunde, China. *Land Use Policy*, 29(2):417-428.

Your Dictionary. 2018. Approach. https://www.yourdictionary.com/approach. Date of access: 14 Nov. 2018.

Zhang, Y. 2015. Public participation approaches for urban planning in China. https://dpla.wisc.edu/sites/dpla.wisc.edu/files/inline-files/15-05-Zhang%2C%20Yining_0.pdf Date of access: 16 Mar. 2018.

Zupancic, T., Kingsley, M., Jason, T. & Macfarlane, R. 2015. Green city: why nature matters to health – an evidence review. http://www.ecohealthontario.ca/files/Green_City_Why_Nature_Matters_to_Health_An_Evidence_Review.pdf Date of access: 16 Mar. 2018.

ANNEXURE 1: EMPIRICAL RESEARCH, PHASE 1 SURVEY QUESTIONNAIRE



RESEARCH ETHICS PROJECT INFORMATION SHEET UNIT FOR ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCES AND MANAGEMENT, SUBPROGRAM 7:

Informed consent for participation in the research "A framework for enhancing social sustainability through the planning of Third Places: a South African approach" by Zhan Goosen (22095128) as part of post-graduate research for the degree *Philosophiae Doctor in Urban and Regional Planning* at the North-West University.

| Purpose of the research: | Orientation of research topic: Third Places for social sustainability Relevance and Value: Provide a comprehensible understanding of the Third Place in an attempt to formulate a theoretical framework with guiding principles on the development of Third Places within urban areas of South Africa to enhance social sustainability. | |
|--------------------------------|--|--|
| Research competence and | Post-graduate student introduction: Z Goosen | |
| expertise: | Study leader introduction: Prof E.J. Cilliers | |
| | Introduction of entity: Urban and Regional | |
| | Planning, Unit for Environmental Sciences and | |
| | Management, North-West University. | |
| Research sponsor: | National research Foundation (NRF) | |
| Requirements of participation: | State favourable risk-benefit ratio: Low risk, | |
| | informative answers of concepts. | |
| Statements of voluntary | Your participation in this study is voluntary. If you | |
| participation: | wish not to participate, please return the | |
| | questionnaire to the researcher. You are also not | |
| | required to answer any question that makes you feel | |
| | uncomfortable. | |

| Privacy statements: | Participant's responses are confidential. | |
|-------------------------|--|--|
| | Confidentiality statement: Only the researchers | |
| | involved in this study will observe your responses. | |
| Submission information: | Electronic submission | |
| Note of thanks: | Thank you for the participation, the received | |
| | information is valued and will provide a better | |
| | understanding of the complexities relating to Third | |
| | Places within urban areas and the possible impact it | |
| | has on improving social sustainability. | |

RESEARCH ETHICS CONSENT FORM UNIT FOR ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCES AND MANAGEMENT, SUBPROGRAM 7:

Full title of Project: A framework for enhancing social sustainability through the planning of Third Places: a South African approach

| Nam | Name, position and contact address of Researcher: | | | | | | |
|---|---|--|--------------------|--|--|--|--|
| Zhan Goosen (Post-graduate Student - PhD) | | | | | | | |
| goosenzhangoosen@gmail.com | | | | | | | |
| Name, position and contact address of Participant: | | | | | | | |
| | | | Please Initial Box | | | | |
| 1. | | d understand the information and have had the opportunity to | | | | | |
| 2. | I understand that my particip free to withdraw at any time | pation is voluntary and that I am without giving reason. | | | | | |
| 3. | I agree to take part in the ab | ove study. | | | | | |
| 4. | I agree to the use of anonyn | | | | | | |
| I agree that my data gathered in this study may be stored (after it has been anonymised) in a specialist data centre and may be used for future research. | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | |
| Name of Participant | | Date | Signature | | | | |
| Nam | e of Researcher | Date | Signature | | | | |

QUESTIONNAIRE FOR RESEARCH STUDY:

A framework for enhancing social sustainability through planning for Third Places: a South African approach

Thank you for your contribution in taking part in this survey. In order to determine the importance of planning for Third Places and the impact on social (people) sustainability, your valuable input as researcher and/or expert is vital. The questionnaire takes approximately 10 minutes to complete.

Do take note that the completion of the questionnaire is voluntary. The results will be used for research purposes only and responses will be treated confidential. The results and findings of this questionnaire will be made available on demand.

This questionnaire forms part of post-graduate research for the degree *Philosophiae Doctor in Urban and Regional Planning* at the North-West University. For more details or ethics requirements please contact the study-leader Prof EJ Cilliers at juanee.cilliers@nwu.ac.za or the researcher Z Goosen at joanee.cilliers@nwu.ac.za or the contact at the latest at the latest

Research overview and questionnaire rationale:

As urbanisation and the functional changing of cities continue to increase, problems associated with the quality of urban life arise. The aim of this study is to propose a theoretical framework with guiding principles on how to change spaces into lively and functional places. This can be achieved by revisiting the Third Place concept (Oldenburg, 1999:6), defined as a public place on neutral ground providing a stage for people to connect and interact. In contrast to First Place (home) and Second Place (work), Third Places allow people to simply enjoy their surroundings. But the social (people) sustainability benefits thereof should be established in order to determine the value of Third Places and the question of how to create the ideal public place (Lynch, 1960), remains the challenge. The theory framework proposed in this research is supported by place-making, lively planning and green urbanism planning approaches.

Section A: Biographical Information

Please answers all of the question below by selecting the option most relevant to you.

| 1. | Province of employment: |
|----|--|
| 0 | Eastern Cape |
| 0 | Free State |
| 0 | Gauteng |
| 0 | KwaZulu-Natal |
| 0 | Limpopo |
| 0 | Mpumalanga |
| 0 | North West |
| 0 | Northern Cape |
| 0 | Western Cape |
| 0 | Other: |
| 2. | Age (in years): |
| 3. | Gender: |
| 0 | Male |
| 0 | Female |
| 4. | Indicate your main sector of employment? |
| 0 | Public Sector |
| 0 | Private Sector |
| | |
| 5. | Provide your profession? |
| 0 | Professional Town Planner |
| 0 | Candidate Planner |
| 0 | Researcher |
| 0 | Lecturer |
| 0 | Other: |
| 6. | Indicate your highest level of planning education? |
| 0 | Diploma |
| _ | Degree |

- Degree
- o Honours degree
- o Masters degree
- o Doctorate degree

Section B: Third Place expertise

7. Indicate the extent of your familiarity regarding Third Places

- Not at all familiar
- o Slightly familiar
- Moderately familiar
- o Very familiar
- Extremely familiar

8. Based on your answer in question 8, is your knowledge on Third Places and the planning thereof based upon a global or local perspective?

- Global perspective
- Local perspective

Section C: Third Places Questionnaire

9. Rank the importance of Third Places within spatial planning?

- Not at all important
- Slightly important
- Moderately important
- Very important
- Extremely important

10. Rank the importance of Third Places within communities in order to create a sense of place and sense of community?

- Not at all important
- Slightly important
- Moderately important
- Very important
- Extremely important

11. Indicate the importance of a bottom-up/ public participatory process in the planning of Third Places?

- Not at all important
- Slightly important
- Moderately important
- Very important
- o Extremely important

12. Indicate the importance of the listed purposes of Third Places:

| Needs & Preferences in the Third Place | Not at all important | Slightly important | Moderately important | Very important | Extremely important | Remarks |
|---|----------------------|--------------------|----------------------|----------------|---------------------|---------|
| Provides users a place to: | | | | | | |
| Interact with people/ friends/ family | | | | | | |
| Workout/ keep fit in (e.g. gym, run, walk) | | | | | | |
| Relax in | | | | | | |
| Enjoy a lunch break in | | | | | | |
| Play for children | | | | | | |
| Walk pets | | | | | | |
| Enjoy/ interact with nature (green) | | | | | | |
| Spend a day in (e.g. picnic) | | | | | | |
| Engage in other activities (e.g. public art, games) | | | | | | |

13. How important is the quality of the following characteristics of Third Places:

| Characteristics | Not at all important | Slightly important | Moderately important | Very important | Extremely important | Remarks |
|--|----------------------|--------------------|----------------------|----------------|---------------------|---------|
| | | | | | | |
| Location | | | | | | |
| Safety | | | | | | |
| Physical design | | | | | | |
| Accessibility | | | | | | |
| Management | | | | | | |
| Amenities | | | | | | |
| Regularity | | | | | | |
| Incorporated Activities | | | | | | |
| Representation of a personal experience | | | | | | |
| Fulfil an individual need | | | | | | |
| Makes one escape from home (first place) and work (second place) | | | | | | |
| Personally functional to people | | | | | | |
| There when needed | | | | | | |

14. Third Places improving social sustainability:

Social sustainability is put forward as the social condition based on human well-being. Although context-based, the impact on social sustainability through the planning of Third Places has an improvement impact on sustainable development within urban areas.

Based on this statement, kindly indicate your level of agreement.

| 14.1 | There exists a need to increase the awareness on social sustainability (as one of |
|------|---|
| | the three perspectives of sustainable development). |

- Strongly disagree
- o Disagree
- Neither agree nor disagree
- o Agree
- Strongly agree
- 14.2 By introducing Third Places within urban areas social sustainability will be enhanced.
- o Strongly disagree
- o Disagree
- Neither agree nor disagree
- o Agree
- o Strongly agree
- 14.3 Kindly suggest one way in which you would improve social sustainability within urban areas?

ANNEXURE 2: EMPIRICAL RESEARCH, PHASE 2 CROSS-TABULATION

Q5 * Q9 Crosstabulation

| | | | Q | 9 | | |
|-------|---|-------------|-------|-------|-------|--------|
| | | | 3 | 4 | 5 | Total |
| Q5 | 1 | Count | 2 | 8 | 5 | 15 |
| | | % within Q5 | 13,3% | 53,3% | 33,3% | 100,0% |
| | 2 | Count | 2 | 5 | 2 | 9 |
| | | % within Q5 | 22,2% | 55,6% | 22,2% | 100,0% |
| | 3 | Count | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 |
| | | % within Q5 | 0,0% | 50,0% | 50,0% | 100,0% |
| | 5 | Count | 0 | 3 | 1 | 4 |
| | | % within Q5 | 0,0% | 75,0% | 25,0% | 100,0% |
| Total | | Count | 4 | 17 | 9 | 30 |
| | | % within Q5 | 13,3% | 56,7% | 30,0% | 100,0% |

| | Value | df | Asymptotic Significance (2- sided) |
|------------------------------|--------|----|--|
| Pearson Chi-Square | 2.155ª | 6 | 0,905 |
| Likelihood Ratio | 2,817 | 6 | 0,831 |
| Linear-by-Linear Association | 0,061 | 1 | 0,805 |
| N of Valid Cases | 30 | | |

a. 10 cells (83.3%) have expected count less than 5. The minimum expected count is .27.

| | | Value | Approximate Significance |
|--------------------|------------|-------|-----------------------------|
| Nominal by Nominal | Phi | 0,268 | 0,905 |
| | Cramer's V | 0,190 | 0,905 |
| N of Valid Cases | | 30 | |

Q7 * Q14.2 Crosstabulation

| | | | Q14.2 | | | | |
|-------|---|-------------|-------|-------|-------|--------|--------|
| | | | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | Total |
| Q7 | 1 | Count | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 |
| | | % within Q7 | 0,0% | 0,0% | 0,0% | 100,0% | 100,0% |
| | 2 | Count | 1 | 1 | 4 | 0 | 6 |
| | | % within Q7 | 16,7% | 16,7% | 66,7% | 0,0% | 100,0% |
| | 3 | Count | 0 | 1 | 6 | 7 | 14 |
| | | % within Q7 | 0,0% | 7,1% | 42,9% | 50,0% | 100,0% |
| | 4 | Count | 0 | 0 | 6 | 3 | 9 |
| | | % within Q7 | 0,0% | 0,0% | 66,7% | 33,3% | 100,0% |
| Total | | Count | 1 | 2 | 16 | 11 | 30 |
| | | % within Q7 | 3,3% | 6,7% | 53,3% | 36,7% | 100,0% |

| | Value | df | Asymptotic Significance (2-sided) |
|---------------------------------|---------|----|---|
| Pearson Chi- Square | 10.893ª | 9 | 0,283 |
| Likelihood Ratio | 12,805 | 9 | 0,172 |
| Linear-by-Linear Association | 1,412 | 1 | 0,235 |
| N of Valid Cases | 30 | | |

a. 14 cells (87.5%) have expected count less than 5. The minimum expected count is .03.

| | | Value | Approximate Significance |
|--------------------|------------|-------|-----------------------------|
| Nominal by Nominal | Phi | 0,603 | 0,283 |
| | Cramer's V | 0,348 | 0,283 |
| N of Valid Cases | | 30 | |

Q7 * Q10 Crosstabulation

| | | | | | Total | |
|-------|---|-------------|-------|-------|--------|--------|
| | | | 3 | 4 | 5 | |
| Q7 | 1 | Count | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 |
| | | % within Q7 | 0,0% | 0,0% | 100,0% | 100,0% |
| | 2 | Count | 1 | 3 | 2 | 6 |
| | | % within Q7 | 16,7% | 50,0% | 33,3% | 100,0% |
| | 3 | Count | 1 | 10 | 3 | 14 |
| | | % within Q7 | 7,1% | 71,4% | 21,4% | 100,0% |
| | 4 | Count | 0 | 2 | 7 | 9 |
| | | % within Q7 | 0,0% | 22,2% | 77,8% | 100,0% |
| Total | | Count | 2 | 15 | 13 | 30 |
| | | % within Q7 | 6,7% | 50,0% | 43,3% | 100,0% |

| | Value | df | Asymptotic Significance (2- sided) |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------|----|--|
| Pearson Chi- Square | 9.640 ^a | 6 | 0,141 |
| Likelihood Ratio | 10,447 | 6 | 0,107 |
| Linear-by- Linear Association | 1,841 | 1 | 0,175 |
| N of Valid Cases | 30 | | |

a. 10 cells (83.3%) have expected count less than 5. The minimum expected count is .07.

| | | Value | Approximate Significance |
|-----------------------|---------------|-------|-----------------------------|
| Nominal by Nominal | Phi | 0,567 | 0,141 |
| | Cramer's V | 0,401 | 0,141 |
| N of Valid Case | S | 30 | |

Q8 * Q11 Crosstabulation

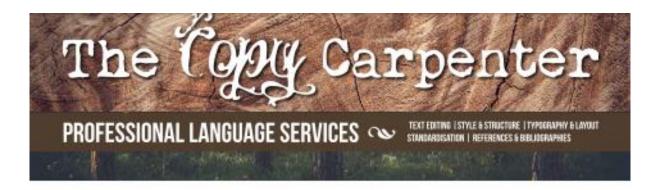
| | | | Q11 | | | |
|-------|---|-------------|-------|-------|-------|--------|
| | | | 3 | 4 | 5 | Total |
| Q8 | 1 | Count | 0 | 3 | 5 | 8 |
| | | % within Q8 | 0,0% | 37,5% | 62,5% | 100,0% |
| | 2 | Count | 6 | 8 | 8 | 22 |
| | | % within Q8 | 27,3% | 36,4% | 36,4% | 100,0% |
| Total | | Count | 6 | 11 | 13 | 30 |
| | | % within Q8 | 20,0% | 36,7% | 43,3% | 100,0% |

| | Value | df | Asymptotic Significance (2- sided) |
|---------------------------------|--------------------|----|--|
| Pearson Chi- Square | 3.109 ^a | 2 | 0,211 |
| Likelihood Ratio | 4,581 | 2 | 0,101 |
| Linear-by-Linear Association | 2,794 | 1 | 0,095 |
| N of Valid Cases | 30 | | |

a. 4 cells (66.7%) have expected count less than 5. The minimum expected count is 1.60.

| | | Value | Approximate Significance |
|-----------------------|------------|-------|-----------------------------|
| Nominal by Nominal | Phi | 0,322 | 0,211 |
| | Cramer's V | 0,322 | 0,211 |
| N of Valid Cases | | 30 | |

ANNEXURE 3: LANGUAGE EDITING CERTIFICATE



1 November 2018

PROOF OF EDITING

To whom it may concern

It is hereby certified that the thesis submitted in fulfilment of the requirements for the degree Doctor of Philosophy in Town and Regional Planning at the North-West University entitled "A framework for enhancing social sustainability through the planning of Third Places: a South African approach" by Ms. Zhan Goosen (student number 22095128) has been proofread and language edited – as per guidelines provided by the author – by a qualified text editor.

Please do not hesitate to contact 072 643 7019 or copycarpenter@gmail.com should you have any queries in this regard.

Sincereley

GERDUS SENEKAL

Text editor & Translator - BA Hons (NWU)

ANNEXURE 4: PROOF OF SUBMISSION OF ARTICLE, JOURNAL OF APPLIED RESEARCH IN QUALITY OF LIFE



Zhan Goosen <goosenzhangoosen@gmail.com>

ARIQ-D-18-00411 - Submission Confirmation

ARIQ <em@editorialmanager.com>
Reply-To: ARIQ <roselle.quilala@springer.com>
To: Zhan Goosen <goosenzhangoosen@gmail.com>

Sat, Nov 17, 2018 at 10:03 PM

Dear Miss Goosen,

Thank you for submitting your manuscript,

"A theory-based framework for enhancing social sustainability through the planning of Third Places", to Applied Research in Quality of Life

The submission id is: ARIQ-D-18-00411

Please refer to this number in any future correspondence.

During the review process, you can keep track of the status of your manuscript by accessing the following web site:

Your username is: zhan

If you forgot your password, you can click the 'Send Login Details' link on the EM Login page at https://ariq.editorialmanager.com/.

With kind regards,

Journals Editorial Office ARIQ Springer P.O. Box 990 3300 AZ DORDRECHT The Netherlands

Fax: +31 78 657 6254